## A Concise Course in Number Theory

Alan Baker, Cambridge University Press, 1983

## Chapter 1: Divisibility

Prime number: a positive integer that cannot be factored into strictly smaller factors. For example, 2, 3, 5, 7.

Every positive integer $n \geq 2$ can be factored into prime numbers: use strong induction on $n$.

Greatest common divisor of two numbers: maximum common divisor.
Division algorithm: For each pair of integers $a$ and $b \neq 0$ there exists a unique pair of integers $q$ and $r$ so that $a=q b+r, 0 \leq r<|b|$. Proof: The real number line is partitioned into intervals of the form $[Q|b|,(Q+1)|b|)$ where $Q$ is an integer. Find the one containing $a$. Then find $q$ so that $q b=Q|b|$ and set $r=a-q b$. A formula for $q$ is $q=\left[\frac{a}{|b|}\right] \frac{|b|}{b}$.
Euclid's algorithm for constructing greatest common divisor of $a$ and $b \neq 0$ : Form the sequence $a_{0}, a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots$ with $a_{1}>a_{2}>\cdots \geq 0$ via $a_{0}=a, a_{1}=b$, and for $k \geq 2, a_{k-2}=q_{k-2} a_{k-1}+a_{k}$ where $0 \leq a_{k}<a_{k-1}$. The sequence has to terminate with some $a_{n}=0$ for some $n \geq 2$, and $a_{n-1}$ is the greatest common divisor. Reason: The recurrence relation can be expressed in the form

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
a_{k-2} \\
a_{k-1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
q_{k-2} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
a_{k-1} \\
a_{k}
\end{array}\right]
$$

This can be used to obtain

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
q_{0} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
q_{1} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right] \ldots\left[\begin{array}{cc}
q_{n-2} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
a_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
a_{0} \\
a_{1}
\end{array}\right]
$$

Simplifying,

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
x & y \\
z & w
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
a_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
p \\
q
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Hence

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x a_{n-1} \\
z a_{n-1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
p \\
q
\end{array}\right]
$$

So we can see that $a_{n-1}$ is a common divisor of $p$ and $q$. Moreover if $d$ is a divisor of both $p$ and $q$ then the recurrence relation can be used to show that
$d$ divides each $a_{k}$, including $a_{n-1}$. Hence $d \leq a_{n-1}$ and $a_{n-1}$ is the greatest common divisor.
Note that the inverse of $\left[\begin{array}{cc}q_{k} & 1 \\ 1 & 0\end{array}\right]$ is $\left[\begin{array}{cc}0 & 1 \\ 1 & -q_{k}\end{array}\right]$. This implies that

$$
\left[\begin{array}{c}
a_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -q_{n-2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -q_{n-3}
\end{array}\right] \cdots\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -q_{0}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
a_{0} \\
a_{1}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Simplifying,

$$
\begin{gathered}
{\left[\begin{array}{c}
a_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
x^{\prime} & y^{\prime} \\
z^{\prime} & w^{\prime}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
a_{1} \\
a_{0}
\end{array}\right],} \\
x^{\prime} p+y^{\prime} q=a_{n-1} .
\end{gathered}
$$

In other words, given integers $p$ and $q$ with greatest common divisor $d$ there is always a pair of integers $j$ and $k$ such that $j p+k q=d$. Whenever we have $j p+k q=r$ we must have $d \mid r$. In particular, when $j p+k q=1$ we must have $d=1$.

Example: Let $a=108$ and $b=93$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
108 & =1 \cdot 93+15 \\
93 & =6 \cdot 15+3 \\
15 & =5 \cdot 3+0
\end{aligned}
$$

hence $a_{0}=108, a_{1}=93, a_{2}=15, a_{3}=3, a_{4}=0, q_{0}=1, q_{1}=6, q_{2}=5$. Therefore $\operatorname{gcd}(108,93)=3$. Substituting these values into

$$
\left[\begin{array}{c}
a_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -q_{n-2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -q_{n-3}
\end{array}\right] \cdots\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -q_{0}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
a_{0} \\
a_{1}
\end{array}\right]
$$

yields

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
3 \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -5
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -6
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -1
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
108 \\
93
\end{array}\right]
$$

Simplifying,

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
3 \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
-6 & 7 \\
31 & -36
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
108 \\
93
\end{array}\right] .
$$

This yields

$$
3=(-6)(108)+7(93) .
$$

A useful lemma is that when $(a, b)=1$ and $a \mid b c$ then $a \mid c$. Reason: $b c=a k$ and $x a+b y=1$ implies $c=c x a+c b y=c x a+a k y=a(c x+k y)$.

We now prove unique factorization for all integers $n \geq 2$. There is only one factorization of 2 into a weakly descending list of primes. Now assume that every integer $\geq 2$ up to $n$ has a unique factorization into a weakly descending list of primes. Suppose $n+1=p_{1} p_{2} \cdots p_{j}=q_{1} q_{2} \ldots q_{k}$ with $p_{1} \geq p_{2} \cdots \geq p_{j}$ and $q_{1} \geq q_{2} \geq \cdots \geq q_{k}$. We will assume wlog that $n+1$ is not prime and that $p_{1} \geq q_{1}$ If $p_{1}>q_{1}$ then $\left(p_{1}, q_{1}\right)=1$, therefore by the lemma $p_{1} \mid q_{2} \cdots q_{k}$. If $p_{1} \neq q_{2}$ then $\left(p_{1}, q_{2}\right)=1$ and $p_{1} \mid q_{3} \cdots q_{k}$. After a finite number of steps we arrive at $p_{1}=q_{i}$ for some $i$, which implies $p_{1} \leq q_{1}$. Contradiction. Therefore $p_{1}=q_{1}$. Dividing both sides by $p_{1}$ we have two factorizations of $(n+1) / p_{1} \geq 2$ into descending lists of primes, so the factorizations must be the same, so the two factorizations of $n+1$ must be the same.
Note that whenever $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}$ are the first $n$ primes then $p_{1} p_{2} \cdots p_{n}+1$ is not divisible by any of these. So it is either prime or has a prime factor not equal to any of these. Hence there are infinitely many primes.

Greatest common divisor and least common multiple construction via prime factorization.

### 1.8 Exercises, p. 7

(i) Using Euclid's method and matrix calculations, $(x, y)=(191,-42)$.
(ii) Since $(35,55)=5$ there is a solution to $35 x+55 y=5$. Since $(5,77)=1$ there is a solution to $5 p+77 q=1$. This yields $35 x p+55 y p+77 q=1$. Given $(x, y)=(-3,2)$ and $(p, q)=(31,-2)$, we obtain $(x p, y p, q)=(-93,62,-2)$.
(iii) Let the primes $\leq n$ be labeled $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{j}$ where $p_{1}=2$. Let $d$ be the least common multiple of $1,2, \ldots, n$ and set $m=1+\frac{1}{2}+\cdots+\frac{1}{n}$. We will show that $d m$ is an odd integer. This implies that $m$ is not an integer, because if it were then $d m$ would be even since $d$ is even. To construct $d$ we inspect the prime factorization of each of the numbers $1,2, \ldots, n$, then multiply the highest power of $p_{1}$ in these factorizations times the highest power of $p_{2}$ in these factorizations times etc. Let $2^{a}$ be the largest power of 2 in $\{1,2, \ldots, n\}$. We claim that this is the uniquely highest power of 2 in the prime factorization of these numbers. To see this, let $k \neq 2^{a}$ be given in this range. Write $k=p_{1}^{f_{1}} p_{2}^{f_{2}} \cdots p_{j}^{f_{j}}$. Then $2^{f_{1}+f_{2}+\cdots+f_{j}} \leq p_{1}^{f_{1}} \cdots p_{k}^{f_{j}}=$ $k \leq n$, therefore $f_{1}+\cdots+f_{j} \leq a$, therefore $f_{1}<a$. So know we know
$d=p_{1}^{a} p_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots p_{k}^{e_{k}}$. This implies that $\frac{d}{k}$ is even when $k \neq 2^{a}$ and that $\frac{d}{2^{a}}$ is odd, hence $d m$ is odd.
(iv) I assume $(x, y, \ldots)$ stands for greatest common divisor and $\{x, y, \ldots\}$ stands for least common multiple. To compute these we inspect prime factorizations and pick out lowest or highest powers of primes. The identity boils down to showing

$$
\min (\max (a, b), \max (b, c), \max (c, a))=\max (\min (a, b), \min (b, c), \min (c, a))
$$

This true: both sides are equal to $b$.
(v) Let the integers in question be $g_{1}, g_{2}, \ldots, g_{k} . n_{0}=a_{0}+n_{1} g_{1}$ determines $a_{0}$ and $n_{1}$ uniquely by the division algorithm. $n_{1}=a_{1}+n_{2} g_{2}$ determines $a_{1}$ and $n_{2}$ uniquely by the division algorithm. Keep on going. Now make all the substitutions and solve for $n_{0}$.
(vi) Let $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{k}$ be the complete list of primes of the form $4 n+3$. Consider the number $x=2+p_{1}^{2} \cdots p_{k}^{2}$. It is congruent to $3 \bmod 4$, so its prime factorization cannot include 2 and cannot be comprised exclusively of primes of the form $4 n+1$. Hence it must be divisible by some $p_{i}$ : contradiction. Hence there are infinitely many primes of the form $4 n+3$.
(vii) Fermat primes are primes of the form $2^{2^{n}}+1$. Now suppose $2^{n}+1$ is a prime number. Then the polynomial $x^{n}+1$ does not factor. This implies that $n$ does not have any odd divisors, because if $n=p q$ where $q$ is odd then $y^{q}+1$ factors (has root -1 ) hence $\left(x^{p}\right)^{q}+1$ factors hence $x^{n}+1$ factors. Since $n$ has no odd divisors we must have $n=2^{m}$ for some $m$, which makes $2^{n}+1$ a Fermat prime.
(viii) Let $d$ be even. Then $x+1$ divides $x^{d}-1$ since the latter has root $x=-1$. So $x^{m}+1$ divides $x^{m d}-1$. Now let $m$ and $d$ be powers of 2 to conclude $2^{2^{n}}+1$ divides $2^{2^{m}}-1$ when $n<m$. Write $2^{2^{m}}-1=k\left(2^{2^{n}}+1\right)$. Then $1 \cdot\left(2^{2^{m}}+1\right)-k \cdot\left(2^{2^{n}}+1\right)=2$. Any common divisor of $2^{2^{m}}+1$ and $2^{2^{n}}+1$ is a divisor of 2 and so must be 1 since 2 is ruled out.
(xi) Let $p_{1}<p_{2}<p_{3}<\cdots$ be the prime numbers. Given that $1+\prod_{i=1}^{n} p_{i}$ is not divisible by $p_{i}$ for any $i \leq n$, it must be divisible by some $p_{j}$ for some $j>n$. This implies $p_{n+1} \leq p_{j} \leq 1+\prod_{i=1}^{n} p_{i}$. So we have established that $p_{n+1} \leq 1+\prod_{i=1}^{n} p_{i}$. We have $p_{1} \leq 2^{2^{0}}$. Assume $p_{k} \leq 2^{2^{k-1}}$ for $1 \leq k \leq n$. Then we know that we can find $p_{m}$ for some $m \geq n+1$ dividing $p_{1} \cdots p_{n}+1$, therefore $p_{n+1} \leq p_{m} \leq p_{1} \cdots p_{n}+1 \leq 2^{2^{0}+\cdots+2^{n-1}}+1=2^{2^{n}-1}+1 \leq 2^{2^{n}}$. Hence
we have proved $p_{n} \leq 2^{2^{n-1}}$ for all $n$. Now let $x$ be an integer in the range $2^{2^{k-1}}+1,2^{2^{k}}+2, \ldots, 2^{2^{k}}$. Given at $p_{k} \leq 2^{2^{k-1}}$, we have $\pi(x) \geq k$. On the other hand, we have $\log _{2} \log _{2}(x) \leq k$, therefore we have $\pi(x) \geq \log _{2} \log _{2}(x)$ for $x \geq 3$.
Exercise: Show that $\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{5}+\cdots+\frac{1}{2 n+1}$ is not an integer.
Exercise: Find an upper bound for $q_{n}=n^{\text {th }}$ largest prime of the form $4 n+3$.
Exercise: Find a lower bound for $\pi^{\prime}(x)=$ number of primes of the form $4 n+3$ that are $\leq x$.

## Chapter 2: Arithmetical Functions

### 2.1 The function $[x]$ :

If $n \leq x<n+1$ then $[x]=n$. Now write $n=q d+r, 0 \leq r<d$. Then $q d+r \leq x<(q+1) d$, therefore $q+\frac{r}{d} \leq \frac{x}{d}<q+1$, therefore $\left[\frac{x}{d}\right]=q=$ $\left[\frac{n}{d}\right]=\left[\frac{[x]}{d}\right]$.
Write $n=q d+r, 0 \leq r<d$. Then

$$
[n / d]=q=|\{d, 2 d, \ldots, q d\}|=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \chi(d \mid k) .
$$

Write $m \leq x<m+1$ and $n \leq y<m+1$. Then $m+n \leq x+y$, therefore $[x]+[y]=m+n \leq[x+y]$.
Let $p$ be a prime and $l_{p}(n)$ the largest power of $p$ in $n$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
l_{p}(n!)= & \sum_{k=1}^{n} l_{p}(k)=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{j \geq 1} \chi\left(p^{j} \mid k\right)=\sum_{j \geq 1} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \chi\left(p^{j} \mid k\right)= \\
& \sum_{j \geq 1}\left[\frac{n}{p^{j}}\right] \leq \sum_{j \geq 1} \frac{n}{p^{j}}=\frac{n}{p} \frac{1}{1-\frac{1}{p}}=\frac{n}{p-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For $n=a+b$,

$$
l_{p}(a!b!)=l_{p}(a!)+l_{p}(b!)=\sum_{j \geq 1}\left[\frac{a}{p^{j}}\right]+\sum_{j \geq 1}\left[\frac{b}{p^{j}}\right] \leq \sum_{j \geq 1}\left[\frac{n}{p^{j}}\right]=l_{p}(n!) .
$$

This implies $a!b!\mid n!$. Of course we already knew this because $\frac{n!}{a!b!}=\binom{n}{a}=$ number of $a$-subsets of $\{1,2, \ldots, n\}$.
2.2 Multiplicative functions and generating functions: A multiplicative arithmetical function is a function $f: \mathbb{Z}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ that satisfies $f(a b)=$ $f(a) f(b)$ when $(a, b)=1$, and more generally

$$
f\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}} p_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots\right)=f\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}}\right) f\left(p_{2}^{e_{2}}\right) \cdots .
$$

When $f$ is not nontrivial (not identically 0 ) then $f(1)=1$.
Generating function of a non-trivial multiplicative function: Let $f$ be a nontrivial multiplicative function and set

$$
F_{k}\left(t_{k}\right)=\sum_{e=0}^{\infty} f\left(p_{k}^{e}\right) t_{k}^{e}
$$

Then

$$
f\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}} p_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots\right)=f\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}}\right) f\left(p_{2}^{e_{2}}\right) \cdots=\left[t_{1}^{e_{1}} t_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots\right] F_{1}\left(t_{1}\right) F_{2}\left(t_{2}\right) \cdots .
$$

Therefore a generating function for $f$ is $F_{f}(t)=F_{f}\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots\right)=F_{1}\left(t_{1}\right) F_{2}\left(t_{2}\right) \cdots$. Any such product with constant term 1 is the generating function of a multiplicative arithmetic function.
Products of generating functions:
If

$$
F(t)=F\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots\right)=\sum f\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}} p_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots\right) t_{1}^{e_{1}} t_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots=\sum_{n \geq 1} f(n) t^{n}
$$

and

$$
G(t)=G\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots\right)=\sum g\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}} p_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots\right) t_{1}^{e_{1}} t_{2}^{e^{2}} \cdots=\sum_{n \geq 1} g(n) t^{n}
$$

then

$$
\begin{gathered}
F(t) G(t)=\sum f\left(p_{1}^{a_{1}} p_{2}^{a_{2}} \cdots\right) g\left(p_{1}^{b_{1}} p_{2}^{b_{2}} \cdots\right) t_{1}^{a_{1}+b_{1}} t_{2}^{a_{2}+b_{2}} \cdots= \\
\sum_{n \geq 1} \sum_{d \mid n} f(d) g(n / d) t^{n}
\end{gathered}
$$

This implies that if $a$ and $b$ are multiplicative functions with generating functions $F_{a}(t)$ and $F_{b}(t)$ then the multiplicative function $c$ with generating function $F_{a}(t) F_{b}(t)$ is defined by

$$
c(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} a(d) b(n / d)=\sum_{d \mid n} b(d) a(n / d) .
$$

## Examples:

1. The unit function $u(n)=1$ has generating function $F_{u}(t)=\frac{1}{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \ldots}$. If $f(n)$ is multiplicative then so is

$$
g(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(n / d)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)
$$

and

$$
F_{g}(t)=F_{u}(t) F_{f}(t)=\frac{F_{f}(t)}{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots}
$$

2. The identity function $i(n)=n$ has generating function $\frac{1}{\left(1-p_{1} t_{1}\right)\left(1-p_{2} t_{2}\right) \ldots}$. If $f(n)$ is multiplicative then so is

$$
h(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d f(n / d)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d) \frac{n}{d}
$$

and

$$
F_{h}(t)=\frac{F_{f}(t)}{\left(1-p_{1} t_{1}\right)\left(1-p_{2} t_{2}\right) \cdots}
$$

3. The Möbius function $\mu(n)$ defined by

$$
\mu\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}} \cdots p_{k}^{e_{k}}\right)=(-1)^{k} \chi\left(e_{1}=\cdots=e_{k}=1\right)
$$

has generating function

$$
F_{\mu}(t)=\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots,
$$

hence is multiplicative. If $f$ is a multiplicative function and $g$ is defined by

$$
g(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)
$$

then we have seen by Example 1 above that

$$
F_{g}(t)=\frac{F_{f}(t)}{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots}=F_{u}(t) F_{f}(t)=\frac{F_{f}(t)}{F_{\mu}(t)} .
$$

This implies

$$
F_{f}(t)=F_{\mu}(t) F_{g}(t),
$$

hence

$$
f(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) g(n / d)=\sum_{d \mid n} g(d) \mu(n / d) .
$$

In particular,

$$
f\left(p^{e}\right)=g\left(p^{e}\right)-g\left(p^{e-1}\right)
$$

when $p$ is prime and $e \geq 1$.
4. The unit characteristic function $\nu(n)=\chi(n=1)$ has generating function $F_{\nu}(t)=1$. Given that $F_{\nu}(t)=F_{u}(t) F_{\mu}(t)$, we have

$$
\nu(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(n / d)
$$

5. Euler's (totient) function $\phi(n)$ : This is defined as the number of natural numbers $\leq n$ that are relatively prime to $n$. Using the inclusion-exclusion sum formula (see below), we have

$$
\phi(n)=\sum_{d \mid P} \mu(d) \sum_{a \in A_{d}} 1=\sum_{d \mid P} \mu(d) \frac{n}{d}=n \sum_{d \mid P} \mu d \frac{1}{d}=n\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{1}}\right)\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{2}}\right) \cdots\left(1-\frac{1}{p_{r}}\right) .
$$

One can check that $\phi$ is multiplicative given this formula. Now define

$$
g(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \phi(d)
$$

This is multiplicative. It satisfies

$$
g\left(p^{k}\right)=\sum_{i=0}^{k} \phi\left(p^{i}\right)=1+(p-1)+\left(p^{2}-p\right)+\cdots+\left(p^{k}-p^{k-1}\right)=p^{k}
$$

hence $g(n)=n$ for all $n$. Therefore

$$
\sum_{d \mid n} \phi(d)=n
$$

To obtain a generating function for $\phi(n)$, note that

$$
F_{i}(t)=F_{g}(t)=F_{u}(t) F_{\phi},
$$

hence

$$
F_{\phi}(t)=F_{\mu}(t) F_{i}(t)=\frac{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots}{\left(1-p_{1} t_{1}\right)\left(1-p_{2} t_{2}\right) \cdots}
$$

6. Möbius Inversion: Let $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given and define

$$
g(x)=\sum_{n \leq x} f(x / n)
$$

summing over positive integers. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) g(x / n)=\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \sum_{m \leq x / n} f(x / m n)=\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \sum_{m n \leq x} f(x / m n)= \\
\sum_{l \leq x} f(x / l) \sum_{m \mid l} \mu(l / m)=\sum_{l \leq x} f(x / l) \nu(l)=f(x)
\end{gathered}
$$

Conversely, if we define

$$
f(x)=\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) g(x / n)
$$

then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} f(x / n)=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{k \leq x / n} \mu(n) g(x / k n)=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{k n \leq x} \mu(n) g(x / k n)=\sum_{l \leq x} g(x / l) \sum_{m \mid l} \mu(l / m)= \\
\sum_{l \leq x} g(x / l) \nu(l)=g(x)
\end{gathered}
$$

When a multiplicative function is used to define the other this way then the second function is also multiplicative, and we obtain

$$
g(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)
$$

if and only if

$$
f(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) g(n / d)
$$

We already derived this by the method of generating functions above.
7. Applying Möbius inversion to the functions

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \tau(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} 1, \\
& \sigma(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d, \\
& n=\sum_{d \mid n} \phi(d),
\end{aligned}
$$

we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 1=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) \tau\left(\frac{n}{d}\right), \\
& n=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) \sigma\left(\frac{n}{d}\right), \\
& \phi(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) \frac{n}{d}
\end{aligned}
$$

The identities above also follow from $F_{u}=F_{\tau} F_{\mu}, F_{i}=F_{\sigma} F_{\mu}, F_{\phi}=F_{i} F_{\mu}$. 8. Summary of generating functions:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mu(n): F_{\mu}=\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots \\
& \nu(n)=\chi(n=1)=\sum_{d \mid n} \mu(n): F_{\nu}=1 \\
& u(n)=1: F_{u}=\frac{1}{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots} \\
& i(n)=n: F_{i}=\frac{1}{\left(1-p_{1} t_{1}\right)\left(1-p_{2} t_{2}\right) \cdots} \\
& \tau(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} 1=\sum_{d \mid n} u(d): F_{\tau}=F_{u}^{2}=\frac{1}{\left(1-t_{1}\right)^{2}\left(1-t_{2}\right)^{2} \cdots} \\
& \sigma(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d=\sum_{d \mid n} i(d): F_{\sigma}=F_{u} F_{i}=\frac{1}{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots\left(1-p_{1} t_{1}\right)\left(1-p_{2} t_{2}\right) \cdots} \\
& \phi(n): F_{\phi}=\frac{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots}{\left(1-p_{1} t_{1}\right)\left(1-p_{2} t_{2}\right) \cdots}=F_{\mu} F_{i} .
\end{aligned}
$$

9. The Riemann zeta-function. Take any generating function $F(t)=F\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, \ldots\right)=$ $F_{1}\left(t_{1}\right) F_{2}\left(t_{2}\right) \cdots$ for a multiplicative function $f$. Making the substitution $t_{i} \mapsto \frac{1}{p_{i}^{s}}$ where $s$ is a complex number yields an infinite product. For example, recall that we have

$$
F_{u}(t)=\frac{1}{\left(1-t_{1}\right)\left(1-t_{2}\right) \cdots}=\sum_{e_{1}, e_{2}, e_{3}, \cdots \geq 0} t_{1}^{e_{1}} t_{2}^{e_{2}} t_{3}^{e_{3}} \cdots .
$$

Hence

$$
F_{u}(s)=F_{i}\left(1 / p_{1}^{s}, 1 / p_{2}^{s}, \ldots\right)=\sum_{e_{1}, e_{2}, e_{3}, \cdots \geq 0} \frac{1}{p_{1}^{e_{1}} p_{2}^{e_{2}} p_{3}^{e_{3}} \cdots}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{s}}
$$

This is called the Riemann zeta-function $\zeta(s)$. In particular,

$$
\zeta(2)=\prod_{p} \frac{1}{1-\left(1 / p^{2}\right)}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2}}=\frac{\pi^{2}}{6} .
$$

We will derive this evaluation this shortly.
More generally, if $F_{f}(t)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n) t^{n}$ then

$$
F_{f}(s)=F_{f}\left(1 / p_{1}^{s}, 1 / p_{2}^{s}, \ldots\right)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{f(n)}{n^{s}}
$$

Examples:

1. $F_{\mu}(s)=\frac{1}{F_{u}(s)}$. This implies

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu(n)}{n^{s}}=\frac{1}{\zeta(s)}
$$

In particular,

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu(n)}{n^{2}}=\frac{6}{\pi^{2}}
$$

2. $F_{\tau}(s)=F_{u}(s)^{2}$. This implies

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu(n)}{n^{s}}=\zeta(s)^{2}
$$

In particular,

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu(n)}{n^{2}}=\frac{\pi^{4}}{36}
$$

3. $F_{i}(s)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{n^{s}}=\zeta(s-1)$.
4. $F_{\sigma}(s)=F_{i}(s) F_{u}(s)$. This implies

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sigma(n)}{n^{s}}=\zeta(s-1) \zeta(s)
$$

5. $F_{\phi}(s)=F_{\mu}(s) F_{i}(s)$. This implies

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\phi(n)}{n^{s}}=\frac{\zeta(s-1)}{\zeta(s)}
$$

6. For arbitrary functions $f: \mathbb{Z}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $g: \mathbb{Z}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ we have

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{f(n)}{n^{s}} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{g(n)}{n_{s}}=\sum_{a, b \geq 1} \frac{f(a) g(b)}{(a b)^{s}}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{s}} \sum_{d \mid n} f(d) g(n / d)
$$

assuming the expressions converge.
Derivation of $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2}}=\frac{\pi^{2}}{6}$ :

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sin ^{-1} x=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdots(2 n-1)}{2 \cdot 4 \cdots(2 n)} \frac{x^{2 n+1}}{2 n+1}, \\
x=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdots(2 n-1)}{2 \cdot 4 \cdots(2 n)} \frac{\sin ^{2 n+1} x}{2 n+1}, \\
\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin ^{2 n+1} x}{2 n+1} d x=\frac{2 \cdot 4 \cdots(2 n)}{1 \cdot 3 \cdots(2 n+1)}, \\
\frac{\pi^{2}}{8}=\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} x d x=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2 n+1)^{2}}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2}}-\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4 n^{2}}=\frac{3}{4} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2}}, \\
\frac{\pi^{2}}{6}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

2.5 The functions $\tau(n)$ and $\sigma(n)$ : These are the multiplicative functions defined by

$$
\tau(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} 1
$$

and

$$
\sigma(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} d
$$

We have

$$
\tau\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}} p_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots\right)=\left(e_{1}+1\right)\left(e_{2}+1\right) \cdots
$$

and

$$
\sigma\left(p_{1}^{e_{1}} p_{2}^{e_{2}} \cdots\right)=\left[e_{1}+1\right]_{p_{1}}\left[e_{2}+1\right]_{p_{2}} \cdots
$$

Given

$$
\log \left(\tau\left(p^{k}\right)^{\frac{1}{\delta}}\right)=\frac{1}{\delta} \log (k+1) \leq k \log p
$$

for all but a finite number of values of $k$ and $p$,

$$
\tau\left(p^{k}\right) \leq p^{k \delta}
$$

and

$$
\tau(n) \leq c n^{\delta}
$$

where $c$ is large enough to compensate for the exceptions. Also,

$$
\sigma(n)=\sum_{d \mid n} \frac{n}{d} \leq n \sum_{d \leq n} \frac{1}{d}<n(1+\log n)<2 n \log n
$$

the estimate coming from an integral comparison.
A lower bound for $\phi(n)$ : set $f(n)=\sigma(n) \phi(n) / n^{2}$. This is a multiplicative function, so to evaluate it it suffices to evaluate $f\left(p^{k}\right)$ for a prime $p$ and $k \geq 1$. We have

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sigma\left(p^{k}\right)=1+p+\cdots+p^{k}=\frac{p^{k+1}-1}{p-1}, \\
\phi\left(p^{k}\right)=p^{k}-p^{k-1}=p^{k-1}(p-1) \\
f\left(p^{k}\right)=\frac{p^{2 k}-p^{k-1}}{p^{2 k}}=1-\frac{1}{p^{k+1}} \geq 1-\frac{1}{p^{2}},
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
f(n) \geq \prod_{m \geq 2}\left(1-\frac{1}{m^{2}}\right)=\frac{1}{2}
$$

the latter a limit of finite products, hence

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sigma(n) \phi(n) / n^{2} \geq \frac{1}{2} \\
\phi(n) \geq \frac{n^{2}}{2 \sigma(n)}>\frac{n^{2}}{4 n \log n}=\frac{n}{4 \log n} .
\end{gathered}
$$

The ideas in this proof: (1) To calculate or estimate a multiplicative function, combine them in such a way that things cancel; (2) use properties of inequalities; (3) exploit known formulas such as infinite sums, infinite products, and integrals.
2.6 Average orders: It's time to start using big-O notation. When we say $f(x)=g(x)+O(h(x))$ we mean that

$$
g(x)-C h(x) \leq f(x) \leq g(x)+C h(x)
$$

for some constant $C>0$ independent of $x$.
Let $x$ be an integer.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} \tau(n)=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{d \mid n} 1=\sum_{d \leq x} \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\
d \backslash n}} 1=\sum_{d \leq x}|\{d, 2 d, 3 d, \ldots\} \cap[0, x]|= \\
\sum_{d \leq x}\left|\{1,2,3, \ldots\} \cap\left[0, \frac{x}{d}\right]\right|=\sum_{d=1}^{x}\left[\frac{x}{d}\right]=\sum_{d=1}^{x}\left(\frac{x}{d}+O(1)\right)=x \sum_{d=1}^{x} \frac{1}{d}+O(x)= \\
x(\log x+O(1))+O(x)=x \log x+O(x),
\end{gathered}
$$

hence

$$
\frac{1}{x} \sum_{n \leq x} \tau(n)=\log x+O(1)
$$

Let $x$ be a positive integer.

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} \sigma(n)=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{d \mid n} \frac{n}{d}=\sum_{\substack{d \leq x}} \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{n}{d \mid n}=
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{d \leq x} \sum_{n \in\{d, 2 d, \ldots\} \cap[0, x]} \frac{n}{d}=\sum_{d \leq x} \sum_{\frac{n}{d} \in\{1,2, \ldots\} \cap\left[0,\left[\frac{x}{d}\right]\right]} \frac{n}{d}=\sum_{d \leq x} \frac{\left[\frac{x}{d}\right]\left(\left[\frac{x}{d}\right]+1\right)}{2}= \\
\sum_{d \leq x} \frac{1}{2}\left(\left(\frac{x}{d}\right)^{2}+O\left(\frac{x}{d}\right)\right)= \\
=\frac{x^{2}}{2}\left(\sum_{d=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{d^{2}}+O(1 / x)\right)+O(x \log x)=\frac{\pi^{2} x^{2}}{12}+O(x \log x) .
\end{gathered}
$$

We have used $\sum_{d=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{d^{2}}=\frac{\pi^{2}}{6}$.
Let $x$ be a positive integer.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} \phi(n)=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{d \mid n} \mu(d) \frac{n}{d}=\sum_{\substack{d \leq x}} \mu(d) \sum_{\substack{d \mid n \\
n \leq x}} \frac{n}{d}= \\
\sum_{d \leq x} \mu(d)\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x}{d}\right)^{2}+O\left(\frac{x}{d}\right)\right)=\frac{x^{2}}{2}\left(\sum_{d=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu(d)}{d^{2}}+O(1 / x)\right)+O(x \log x) \\
=\frac{3 x^{2}}{\pi^{2}}+O(x \log x)
\end{gathered}
$$

We have used

$$
\sum_{d=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu(d)}{d^{2}}=\frac{6}{\pi^{2}}
$$

We obtain

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} \phi(n)=\frac{3 x^{2}}{\pi^{2}}+O(x \log x)
$$

Note that the number of integer pairs $(p, q)$ such that $1 \leq p<q \leq x$ and $\operatorname{gcd}(p, q)=1$ is $\sum_{q \leq x} \phi(q)$. Given there are $\frac{x^{2}-x}{2}$ such pairs, the probability that $p<q$ are relatively prime in $\{1,2, \ldots, x\}$ is $\sim \frac{6}{\pi^{2}}$.
2.7: Perfect numbers: Perfect number is a positive integer which is the sum of its proper divisors: $\sigma(n)=2 n$. Examples include 6 and 28. More generally, if $p$ is a prime such that $2^{p}-1$ is prime (i.e. a Mersenne prime), then
$\sigma\left(2^{p-1}\left(2^{p}-1\right)\right)=\sigma\left(2^{p-1}\right) \sigma\left(2^{p}-1\right)=\left(1+2+\cdots+2^{p-1}\right)\left(1+\left(2^{p}-1\right)\right)=\left(2^{p}-1\right) 2^{p}$
hence $2^{p-1}\left(2^{p}-1\right)$ is a perfect number. These are the only even examples: Let $n$ be perfect and write $n=2^{a} b$ where $b$ is odd and $a \geq 1$. The divisors of $n$ are of the form $2^{i} d$ where $d \mid b$. Hence

$$
2^{a+1} b=2 n=\sigma(n)=\left(2^{a+1}-1\right) \sigma(b) .
$$

Unique factorization yields $\sigma(b)=2^{a+1} b_{0}$ hence $b=\left(2^{a+1}-1\right) b_{0}$, which yields information about $\sigma(b)$. If $b_{0}>1$ then $b$ and $b_{0}$ contribute to $\sigma(b)$, hence

$$
2^{a+1} b_{0}=\sigma(b) \geq b+b_{0}+1=\left(2^{a+1}-1\right) b_{0}+b_{0}+1>2^{a+1} b_{0}
$$

a contradiction. Therefore $b_{0}=1, b=2^{a+1}-1, n=2^{a}\left(2^{a+1}-1\right)$. We now have

$$
\begin{gathered}
2^{a+1}\left(2^{a+1}-1\right)=2 n=\sigma(n)=\left(2^{a+1}-1\right) \sigma\left(2^{a+1}-1\right), \\
2^{a+1}=\sigma\left(2^{a+1}-1\right), \\
b+1=\sigma(b),
\end{gathered}
$$

which implies that $b$ is a prime number. So $2^{a+1}-1$ is prime. This forces $a+1$ prime: $x^{h k}-1=y^{k}-1$ has root $y=1$, hence

$$
x^{h k}-1=y^{k}-1=(y-1) g(y)=\left(x^{h}-1\right) g\left(x^{h}\right) .
$$

Given $n=2^{a}\left(2^{a+1}-1\right)$ we have $n=2^{p-1}\left(2^{p}-1\right)$ where $p$ and $2^{p}-1$ are prime.
Remark: According to Davenport (An Introduction to Higher Arithmetic), it is not known if there are infinitely many perfect numbers or if there are any odd perfect numbers.

The ideas in this proof: (1) Compare numbers and use unique factorization; (2) information about how $n$ factors yields information about $\sigma(n)$; (3) exploit inequalities; (4) a number $n$ is prime if $\sigma(n)=n+1$.

## Inclusion-Exclusion Sum and Product

Let $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{n}$ be a union of finite sets of natural numbers. Let $f$ be an arithmetic function. For a finite subset $A$ of natural numbers write

$$
\|A\|=\sum_{a \in A} f(a)
$$

Let $s(a)$ the number of sets that $a$ belongs to. Then for each $1 \leq k \leq n$,

$$
\sum_{I \in\binom{[n]}{k}} \chi\left(a \in A_{I}\right) f(a)=f(a)\binom{s(a)}{k}
$$

Now sum over each $a \in A_{1} \cup \cdots A_{n}$. We obtain

$$
\sum_{I \in\binom{[n]}{k}}\left\|A_{I}\right\|=\sum_{a \in A_{1} \cup \ldots \cup A_{n}} f(a)\binom{s(a)}{k}
$$

Now form the alternating sum

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{k-1} \sum_{I \in\binom{[n]}{k}}\left\|A_{I}\right\|=\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{k-1} \sum_{a \in A_{1} \cup \cdots \cup A_{n}} f(a)\binom{s(a)}{k} .
$$

The sum on the right-hand side can be reorganized into

$$
\sum_{a \in A_{1} \cup \cdots \cup A_{n}} f(a) \sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{k-1}\binom{s(a)}{k} .
$$

Each of the expressions $\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{k-1}\binom{s(a)}{k}$ is equal to 1 by the Binomial Theorem. Hence we obtain

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{n}(-1)^{k-1} \sum_{I \in\binom{[n]}{k}}\left\|A_{I}\right\|=\sum_{a \in A_{1} \cup \cdots \cup A_{n}} f(a)=\left\|A_{1} \cup \cdots \cup A_{n}\right\| .
$$

Example: Let $f$ be an arithmetic function. We wish to evaluate

$$
\sum_{\substack{1 \leq a \leq n \\(a, n)=1}} f(a) .
$$

Let the prime factorization of $n$ be $n=p_{1}^{e_{1}} \cdots p_{r}^{e_{r}}$. For each $d \leq n$ let $A_{d}=\{a \leq n: d \mid a\}$. We have

$$
\{a: 1 \leq a \leq n \text { and }(a, n)>1\}=A_{p_{1}} \cup A_{p_{2}} \cup \cdots \cup A_{p_{r}}
$$

By the inclusion-exclusion formula,

$$
\sum_{\substack{1 \leq a \leq n \\(a, n)>1}} f(a)=-\sum_{d \mid P} \mu(d) \sum_{a \in A_{d}} f(a)+\sum_{a=1}^{n} f(a),
$$

hence

$$
\sum_{\substack{1 \leq a \leq n \\(a, n)=1}} f(a)=\sum_{d \mid P} \mu(d) \sum_{a \in A_{d}} f(a)
$$

where

$$
P=p_{1} p_{2} \cdots p_{r}
$$

## Example:

$$
\prod_{\substack{1 \leq a \leq n \\(a, n)=1}} f(a)=\prod_{d \mid P}\left(\prod_{a \in A_{d}} f(a)\right)^{\mu(d)} .
$$

## Lemma:

$$
\sum_{d \mid P} \mu(d) d^{k}=\left(1-p_{1}^{k}\right)\left(1-p_{2}^{k}\right) \cdots\left(1-p_{r}^{k}\right)
$$

Examples:

1. $f(a)=a$. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{a \in A_{d}} f(a)=n^{2} / 2 d+n / 2 \\
\sum_{\substack{\leq a \leq n \\
(a, n)=1}} f(a)=\frac{n^{2}}{2}\left(1-1 / p_{1}\right) \cdots\left(1-1 / p_{r}\right)=\frac{n \phi(n)}{2} .
\end{gathered}
$$

2. $f(a)=a^{3}$. Then $\sum_{a \in A_{d}} f(a)=\left(d n^{2}\right) / 4+n^{3} / 2+n^{4} /(4 d)$,

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{\substack{1 \leq a \leq n \\
(a, n)=1}} f(a)=\frac{n^{2}}{4}\left(1-p_{1}\right) \cdots\left(1-p_{r}\right)+\frac{n^{4}}{4}\left(1-1 / p_{1}\right) \cdots\left(1-1 / p_{r}\right)= \\
\frac{\phi(n)}{4}\left((-1)^{r} p_{1} \cdots p_{r} n+n^{3}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

3. $f(a)=a$. Then $\prod_{a \in A_{d}} f(a)=d^{n / d}(n / d)$ !, therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \prod_{\substack{1 \leq a \leq n \\
(a, n)=1}} a=\prod_{d \mid P}\left(d^{n / d}(n / d)!\right)^{\mu(d)}=\prod_{d \mid P}\left((n / d)^{d} d!\right)^{\mu(n / d)}= \\
& n^{\sum_{d \mid n} d \mu(n / d)} \prod_{d \mid n}\left(d!/ d^{d}\right)^{\mu(n / d)}=n^{\phi(n)} \prod_{d \mid n}\left(d!/ d^{d}\right)^{\mu(n / d)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 2.10 Exercises:

(i) This is a multiplicative function which evaluates to $-p$ on $p^{k}$, so if $n=$ $p_{1}^{e_{1}} \cdots p_{r}^{e_{r}}$ then we obtain $(-1)^{r} p_{1} \cdots p_{r}$.
(ii) Let $n=p_{1}^{e_{1}} \cdots p_{r}^{e_{r}} . \quad \sum_{d \mid n} \Lambda(d)=\sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{j=1}^{e_{i}} \log p_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{r} e_{i} \log p_{i}=$ $\log n$. Hence $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{s}} \zeta(s)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\log n}{n^{s}}$,

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^{s}}=\zeta(s)^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\log n}{n^{s}}=-\frac{\zeta^{\prime}(s)}{\zeta(s)} .
$$

(iii) See Example 1 above. We have $f=\frac{1}{2} \phi+\frac{1}{2} \nu$. Given $F_{\phi} F_{u}=F_{i}$ and $F_{\nu} F_{u}=F_{u}$, we have $\sum_{d \mid n} f(d)=\frac{1}{2}(n+1)$.
(iv) See Example 2 above.
(v) See Example 3 above.
(vi) Recall $\{x\}=x-[x]$ and $\left[\frac{x}{d}\right]=\left[\frac{[x]}{d}\right]$. Hence $\left\{\frac{x}{d}\right\}=\frac{x}{n}-\left[\frac{[x]}{d}\right]$. We have

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n)[x / n]=\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \sum_{k \leq x / n} 1=\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \sum_{k n \leq x} 1=\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \sum_{\substack{m \leq x \\
n \leq m}} 1= \\
\sum_{m \leq x} \sum_{n \mid m} \mu(n)=\sum_{m \leq x} \nu(m)=1 .
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence

$$
\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \frac{x}{n}-\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n)\left\{\frac{[x]}{n}\right\}=1
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \frac{1}{n}=\frac{1}{x}\left(1+\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n)\left\{\frac{[x]}{n}\right\}\right) \\
\left|\sum_{n \leq x} \mu(n) \frac{1}{n}\right|=\frac{1}{x}\left|1+\sum_{n \leq[x]} \mu(n)\left\{\frac{[x]}{n}\right\}\right| \leq \frac{[x]}{x} \leq 1
\end{gathered}
$$

since all the terms in the sum have absolute value $\leq 1$ and the last summand is 0 .
(vii) If $\mu(n /(m, n))=0$ then every summand is zero and the identity is true. Now consider $\mu(n /(m, n)) \neq 0$. Let $a$ be the product of the primes appearing to smaller exponent in $m$, let $b$ be the product ot the primes appearing to smaller exponent in $n$, and let $c$ be the product of the primes appearing to the same exponent in $m$ and $n$. Then we have $(m, n)=a b c$, where by convention an empty product is 1 . We also have $m=A b c$ and $n=a B c$ where $P(A)=P(a)$ and $P(B)=P(b)$, denoting by $P(k)$ the product of the distinct primes appearing in $k$. Moreover $n /(m, n)=B / b=P(b)$ since we are assuming $n /(m, n)$ is square free. Any divisor of $(m, n)$ has the form $a^{\prime} b^{\prime} c^{\prime}$ where $a^{\prime}\left|a, b^{\prime}\right| b$, and $c^{\prime} \mid c$. Therefore

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{d \mid(m, n)} d \mu(n / d)=\sum_{a^{\prime}\left|a, b^{\prime}\right| b, c^{\prime} \mid c} a^{\prime} b^{\prime} c^{\prime} \mu\left(\left(a / a^{\prime}\right)\left(B / b^{\prime}\right)\left(c / c^{\prime}\right)\right)= \\
\left(\sum_{a^{\prime} \mid a} a^{\prime} \mu\left(a / a^{\prime}\right)\right)\left(\sum_{b^{\prime} \mid b} b^{\prime} \mu\left(B / b^{\prime}\right)\right)\left(\sum_{c^{\prime} \mid c} c^{\prime} \mu\left(c / c^{\prime}\right)\right)= \\
\phi(a)\left(\sum_{b^{\prime} \mid b} b^{\prime} \mu\left(B / b^{\prime}\right)\right) \phi(c)= \\
\phi(a) b \mu(P(b)) \phi(c)=\mu(n /(m, n)) \frac{\phi(n)}{\phi(n /(m, n))}
\end{gathered}
$$

since the only nonzero contribution by $\mu\left(B / b^{\prime}\right)$ is from $b^{\prime}=b$.
(viii) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \phi(n) \frac{x^{n}}{1-x^{n}}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \phi(n)\left(x^{n}+x^{2 n}+x^{3 n}+\cdots\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\left(x^{j} \sum_{d \mid j} \phi(d)\right)=$ $\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} j x^{j}=\frac{x}{(1-x)^{2}}$.
(ix) Let $x$ be an integer.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\phi(n)}{n}=\sum_{n \leq x} \sum_{d \mid n} \frac{\mu(d)}{d}=\sum_{d \leq x} \frac{\mu(d)}{d} \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\
d \mid n}} 1=\sum_{d \leq x} \frac{\mu(d)}{d}\left[\frac{x}{d}\right]= \\
\sum_{d \leq x} \frac{\mu(d)}{d}\left(\frac{x}{d}+O(1)\right)=x \sum_{d \leq x} \frac{\mu(d)}{d^{2}}+O(1) \sum_{d \leq x} \frac{\mu(d)}{d}= \\
x\left(\left(6 / \pi^{2}\right)+O(1 / x)\right)+O(\log x) O(1)=\left(6 / \pi^{2}\right) x+O(\log x) .
\end{gathered}
$$

## Chapter 3: Congruences

Definition. Given a natural number $n \in\{1,2,3, \ldots\}$ we say that integers $a$ and $b$ satisfy $a \equiv b(\bmod n)$ provided $n \mid(b-a)$. This is an equivalence relation.

Properties: (1) $a \equiv b$ and $a^{\prime} \equiv b^{\prime}$ imply $a \pm a^{\prime} \equiv b \pm b^{\prime}$ and $a a^{\prime} \equiv b b^{\prime}$. (2) $a \equiv r$ where $a=q n+r$ and $0 \leq r<n$, which implies that there are exactly $n$ different congruence classes mod $n$. (3) When $(a, n)=1$ then $a b \equiv 1 \bmod$ $n$ has a solution: use $x$ where $x a+n y=1 . b$ is unique $\bmod n: a b \equiv 1$ and $a c \equiv 1$ implies $n \mid a(b-c)$ implies $n \mid(b-c)$ implies $b \equiv c \bmod n$. We write $a^{-1} \equiv b$. (4) $(a, n)=1$ and $a \equiv b \bmod n$ implies $(b, n)=1$ and $a^{-1} \equiv b^{-1}$. (5) If $(a, n)=1$ and $a x \equiv y \bmod n$ then $x \equiv a^{-1} y \bmod n$. The solution $x$ is unique $\bmod n$.
Linear equations: Consider the equation

$$
a x \equiv b(\bmod n) .
$$

This is equivalent to $n \mid(a x-b)$, and if there is a solution then $(a, n) \mid b$. So this is a necessary condition. If this condition holds then we are attempting to solve $a_{0} x \equiv b_{0}\left(\bmod n_{0}\right)$, where we have divided through by $(a, n)$. We have seen above that has a solution because $\left(a_{0}, n_{0}\right)=1$. Conclusion: $a x \equiv$ $b(\bmod n)$ has a solution iff $(a, n) \mid b$.

Note that there is a unique solution for $x \bmod n_{0}$. So the solutions are all of the form $x_{0}+k n_{0}$ where $x_{0}$ is a particular solution. Number of distinct solutions $\bmod n: x_{0}+k n_{0} \equiv x_{0}+j n_{0}(\bmod n) \Longleftrightarrow n \mid n_{0}(k-j) \Longleftrightarrow$ $(a, n) \mid(k-j) \Longleftrightarrow k \equiv j(\bmod (a, n))$. So there are $(a, n)$ distinct solutions $\bmod n$, and it suffices to use $x_{0}+k n_{0}$ where $0 \leq k \leq(a, n)-1$.

More generally, we now have the means to solve the equation $a x+b \equiv c \bmod$ $n$.

Chinese remainder theorem: Let $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{k}$ be natural numbers which are coprime in pairs, meaning $\left(n_{i}, n_{j}\right)=1$ when $i \neq j$. Let $c_{1}, \ldots, c_{k}$ be integers. Then there is an integer $x$, unique $\bmod n_{1} n_{2} \cdots n_{k}$, such that

$$
(x, x, \ldots, x) \equiv\left(c_{1}, c_{2}, \ldots, c_{k}\right) \bmod \left(n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{k}\right)
$$

First proof: repeated substitution and shifting. We are seeking a solution of the form $c_{1}+a_{1} n_{1}$ for an appropriate $a_{1}$. We require $c_{1}+a_{1} n_{1} \equiv c_{2}$ $\bmod n_{2}$, which has a solution for $a_{1}$ because $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}\right)=1$. The most general solution is $a_{1}+a_{2} n_{2}$. We require $c_{1}+\left(a_{1}+a_{2} n_{2}\right) n_{1} \equiv c_{3} \bmod n_{3}$, which has a solution for $a_{2}$ because $\left(n_{2} n_{1}, n_{3}\right)=1$. The most general solution is $a_{2}+a_{3} n_{3}$. We require $c_{1}+\left(a_{1}+\left(a_{2}+a_{3} n_{3}\right) n_{2}\right) n_{1} \equiv c_{4} \bmod n_{4}$, which has a solution for $a_{3}$ because $\left(n_{3} n_{2} n_{1}, n_{4}\right)=1$. Keep on going until we have found

$$
x=c_{1}+a_{1} n_{1}+a_{2} n_{2} n_{1}+\cdots+a_{k} n_{k} n_{k-1} \cdots n_{1} .
$$

The solution is unique $\bmod n_{1} n_{2} \cdots n_{k}$ because if $y$ is another solution then then $n_{i} \mid(x-y)$ for $i=1, \ldots, k$, so $n_{1} \cdots n_{k} \mid(x-y)$.
Example: Solve $(x, x, x) \equiv(1,2,3) \bmod (6,35,143)$. Solution: $1+6 a_{1} \equiv 2$ $\bmod 35, a_{1}=6+35 a_{2}, 1+6\left(6+35 a_{2}\right) \equiv 3 \bmod 143, a_{2}=1088+143 a_{3}$, so our solution is $x=1+6\left(6+35\left(1088+143 a_{3}\right)\right)=228517+30030 a_{3}$.

Second proof: decoupling. First find solutions to $x_{i} \equiv c_{i} \bmod n_{i}$ and $x_{i} \equiv 0 \bmod n_{j}$ for $j \neq i$, then use the solution $x=x_{1}+x_{2}+\cdots+x_{k}$. So we have reduced the problem to solving the simultaneous equations $x_{i} \equiv c_{i}$ $\bmod n_{i}$ and $x_{i} \equiv 0 \bmod n_{1} \cdots \widehat{n_{i}} \cdots n_{k}$. Setting $x_{i}=n_{1} \cdots \widehat{n_{i}} \cdots n_{k} y_{i}$ we are seeking a solution to

$$
n_{1} \cdots \widehat{n_{i}} \cdots n_{k} y_{i} \equiv c_{i}\left(\bmod n_{i}\right) .
$$

There will be a solution for $y_{i}$ because $\left(n_{1} \cdots \widehat{n_{i}} \cdots n_{k}, n_{i}\right)=1$.
With the $n_{i}$ coprime in pairs, we can now solve the simultaneous equations $a_{i} x=b_{i}\left(\bmod n_{i}\right)$ : first solve each solution individually, yielding solutions $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}$, then find $x$ so that $x \equiv x_{i}\left(\bmod n_{i}\right)$ for $i=1, \ldots k$.
Alternative proof that $\phi$ is multiplicative: Let $m \geq 2, n \geq 2$ be given such that $(m, n)=1$. Let $1 \leq m_{1}<\cdots<m_{r}<m$ satisfy $\left(m_{i}, m\right)=1$, let
$1 \leq n_{1}<\cdots<n_{s}<n$ satisfy $\left(n_{i}, n\right)=1$, and let $1 \leq x_{1}<\cdots<x_{t}<m n$ satisfy $\left(x_{i}, m n\right)=1$. Consider the mapping $\left(m_{i}, n_{j}\right) \mapsto m_{i} n+n_{j} m$. If the images are congruent to $x_{i}$ 's and each $x_{i}$ is uniquely an image modulo $m n$, then we know that $r s=t$.

We first show $\left(m_{i} n+n_{j} m, m n\right)=1$. Let $d$ be a common divisor of these numbers. Then $d \mid m$ or $d \mid n$. Without loss of generality $d \mid m$. Then $(d, n)=1$ and $d \mid m_{i} n$, therefore $d \mid m_{i}$. Since $\left(m, m_{i}\right)=1, d=1$.
The mapping is injective: $m_{a} n+n_{b} m=m_{c} n+n_{d} m \Longrightarrow\left(m_{a}-m_{c}\right) n=$ $\left(n_{d}-n_{b}\right) m \Longrightarrow n \mid\left(n_{d}-n_{b}\right) \Longrightarrow n_{d}=n_{b}$ and $m_{a}=m_{c}$.

The mapping is surjective: We wish to find $m_{i}$ and $n_{j}$ such that $m_{i} n+n_{j} m \equiv$ $x_{k} \bmod m n$. We can certainly find integers $p$ and $q$ such that $p m+q n=1$ since $(m, n)=1$. This yields $x_{k} p m+x_{k} q n=x_{k}$. The claim is that $\left(x_{k} p, n\right)=$ 1 and $\left(x_{k} q, m\right)=1$. It suffices to prove $(p, n)=1$ and $(q, m)=1$, but these are true since $p m+q n=1$.

Lemma: Let $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)}$ a complete list of class representatives in the set $\{a \in \mathbb{Z}:(a, n)=1\}$. Let $(k, n)=1$. Then $k a_{1}, k a_{2}, \ldots, k a_{\phi(n)}$ is a permutation of $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)} \bmod n$.
Proof: The set $\{a \in \mathbb{Z}:(a, n)=1\}$ is closed with respect to multiplication, so all the elements in the list $k a_{1}, k a_{2}, \ldots, k a_{\phi(n)}$ appear in this set. We need only show that the list consists of distinct elements modulo $n$. The results from $k a_{i} \equiv k a_{j} \Longrightarrow n\left|k\left(a_{i}-a_{j}\right) \Longrightarrow n\right|\left(a_{i}-a_{j}\right)$.
Euler's Theorem: Assume $(a, n)=1$. Then $a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1 \bmod n$.
Proof: By the previous theorem we know that $a a_{1}, \ldots, a a_{\phi(n)}$ is a permutation of $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{\phi(n)} \bmod n$. Forming the product of the lists,

$$
a^{\phi(n)} a_{1} \cdots a_{\phi(n)} \equiv a_{1} \cdots a_{\phi(n)} \bmod n
$$

This implies $a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1 \bmod n$.
Fermat's Theorem: Let $p$ be prime and assume $(p, n)=1$. Then $a^{p-1} \equiv 1$ $\bmod p$.

Proof: This is a corollary of Euler's Theorem with $n=p$ and $\phi(n)=p-1$.
Wilson's Theorem: Let $p>2$ be a prime. Then $(p-1)$ ! $\equiv-1 \bmod$ $p$. Proof: The class representatives are $1,2, \ldots, p-1$, and for each class $a$ there is a unique class $a^{\prime}$ such that $a a^{\prime} \equiv 1 \bmod p$. Classify the numbers
$1,2, \ldots, p-1$ into three types: $a<a^{\prime}, a=a^{\prime}, a>a^{\prime}$. In the $a=a^{\prime}$ category we have $a^{2} \equiv 1$, therefore $p \mid(a-1)(a+1)$, therefore $p \mid(a-1)$ or $p \mid(a+1)$. The only possibilities are $a=1$ and $a=p-1$. The remaining numbers pair off to form the product $2 \cdot 3 \cdots(p-2) \equiv 1$. This yields $(p-1)!\equiv-1$.
A converse: let $n>1$ be a natural number that satisfies $(n-1)!\equiv-1 \bmod$ $n$. Then $n \mid((n-1)!+1)$. So any $d<n$ dividing $n$ divides 1 , forcing $d=1$. Hence $n$ must be prime.
The field $\mathbb{Z}_{p}$ : Define addition and multiplication in $\{0,1, \ldots, p-1\}$ using modulus class representatives. The set of non-zero elements is closed with respect to multiplication and each element has a unique multiplicative inverse, hence forms a group. We call such a set a field.
Finding $\sqrt{-1}$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{p}$ : Trivial when $p=2$. For odd $p$, consider solving the equation $x^{2} \equiv-1 \bmod p$. If we can realize $x^{2}$ as $(p-1)$ ! then we have a solution. Write $p=2 r+1$. We have $-1 \equiv(p-1)!=r!(r+1)(r+2) \cdots(2 r) \equiv$ $r!(-r)(-r+1) \cdots(-1)=(-1)^{r}(r!)^{2}$. If $r$ is even we get $-1 \equiv x^{2}$ where $x=r!$. This requires $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4$. Now if $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$ the equation $x^{2} \equiv-1 \bmod p$ implies $x^{p-1}=x^{4 n+2} \equiv(-1)^{2 n+1}=-1$, which contradicts Fermat's theorem. So there is no $\sqrt{-1}$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{p}$ when $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$, but there is when $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4$.

Lagrange's Theorem: Given a polynomial $f(x)$ of degree $n$ and integer coefficients, where $p$ does not divide the leading term, there are at most $n$ solutions to $f(x) \equiv 0 \bmod p$. Proof: Induction argument regarding polynomials in $\mathbb{Z}_{p}[x]$.
In $\mathbb{Z}_{p}[x]$ Fermat's theorem implies

$$
x^{p-1}-1=(x-1)(x-2) \cdots(x-p+1) .
$$

Therefore $x^{p-1}-1$ has exactly $p-1$ roots in $\mathbb{Z}_{p}$.
Now suppose $d \mid(p-1)$. Write $p-1=q d . \quad(Y-1) \mid\left(Y^{q}-1\right)$, therefore $\left(x^{d}-1\right) \mid\left(x^{p-1}-1\right)$, so we can write $x^{p-1}-1=\left(x^{d}-1\right) g(x)$. Since $x^{p-1}-1$ has $p-1$ roots, and $g(x)$ provides at most $p-1-d$ of them by a degree argument, $x^{d}-1$ has to provide at least $d$ of them. So $x^{d}-1$ has exactly $d$ roots in $\mathbb{Z}_{p}$.
Second proof of Wilson's theorem: Evaluating at $x=0$ in the identity above yields

$$
-1 \equiv(-1)^{p-1}(p-1)!=(p-1)!\bmod p
$$

for an odd prime.
When $n$ is not prime, it is possible for there to be more than $\operatorname{deg}(f)$ distinct roots $\bmod n$ of a monic polynomial $f(x)$. Construction: Let $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{k}$ be distinct primes. Set $f_{i}(x)=x^{p_{i}}-x$ for each $i \leq k$. Then $f_{i}(x)$ has exactly $p_{i}$ roots mod $p_{i}$. Now set $f(x)=f_{1}(x) \cdots f_{k}(x)$. Choose any vector $\left(q_{1}, \ldots, q_{k}\right)$ where $0 \leq q_{i}<p_{i}$ for each $i$. By the Chinese remainder theorem there is a unique integer $x \bmod p_{1} \cdots p_{n}$ such that $x \equiv q_{i} \bmod p_{i}$ for each $i$, and $f(x) \equiv 0 \bmod p_{1}, \bmod p_{2}, \ldots, \bmod p_{k}$, hence $\bmod p_{1} p_{2} \cdots p_{n}$. So we have constructed a polynomial of degree $p_{1}+\cdots+p_{k}$ with $p_{1} \cdots p_{k}$ roots. For example, $f(x)=\left(x^{3}-x\right)\left(x^{5}-x\right)$ has degree 8 and 15 roots mod 15 .

## Section 3.6: Primitive roots.

Let $(a, n)=1$. We know that $a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1 \bmod n$. The order of $a \bmod n$ is defined to be $d=o(a)$, the smallest positive integer such that $a^{d} \equiv 1 \bmod$ $n$. It is a divisor of $\phi(n)$ : write $\phi(n)=p d+r$ where $0 \leq r<d$. Raising $a$ to the power of both sides and simplifying, $a^{r} \equiv 1$. By minimality of $d$ this forces $r=0$. A primitive root $\bmod n$ is an integer $a$ such that $(a, n)=1$ and $a$ has order $\phi(n) \bmod n$.

Terminology: when the order of $a \bmod n$ is $d$ we say that $a$ belongs to $d \bmod$ $n$.

Theorem: There are $\phi(p-1)$ primitive roots $\bmod p$ for a prime $p$.
Proof: Let $\psi(d)$ be the number of elements $a$ with $1 \leq a<p$ and $(a, p)=1$ and having order $d$. We wish to prove $\psi(p-1)=\phi(p-1)$. We have

$$
\sum_{d \mid(p-1)} \psi(d)=p-1
$$

Given that

$$
\sum_{d \mid(p-1)} \phi(d)=p-1
$$

we will have $\psi(d)=\phi(d)$ for each $d$ dividing $p-1$ provided we can show $\psi(d) \leq \phi(d)$ for each such $d$. To do this, suppose that $\psi(d)>0$ for a given $d$. Let $a$ have order $d$. Then the numbers $1, a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{d-1}$ are distinct mod $p$ and constitute all the roots of $x^{d}-1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{p}$. We now count the elements of order $d \bmod p-1$. Let $b$ be an element with order $d$. It is a root of $x^{d}-1 \bmod p$, hence it must have the form $a^{m}$ for a unique $m$ satisfying
$0 \leq m \leq d-1$. We will show $(m, d)=1$. Suppose $(m, d)=k$ and write $m=m_{0} k$ and $d=d_{0} k$. Then $b^{d_{0}}=\left(a^{m}\right)^{d_{0}}=a^{\left(m_{0} d / k\right)}=\left(a^{d}\right)^{m_{0}} \equiv 1$, forcing $d_{0} \geq d$. But $d \geq d_{0}$, hence $d=d_{0}$ and $k=1$. Hence $\psi(d) \leq \phi(d)$, as desired.

Remark: The theorem implies that there is always at least one primitive root $\bmod p$ for every prime $p$. It says nothing about how to find them, but in the problems to think about for Chapters 3 and 4 I illustrate some of the techniques. One can always use brute force. In Problem (v) below we will show how all the primitive roots of $n$ are related to any particular one of them.

Remark: Now that we know that there are $\phi(d) \geq 1$ primitive roots of unity of order $d \bmod p$ when $d \mid(p-1)$, we can pick any of them, say $a$, and produce all the roots of $x^{d}-1$ via the list $1, a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{d-1}$. Hence

$$
x^{d}-1=(x-1)(x-a) \cdots\left(x-a^{d-1}\right)
$$

in $\mathbb{Z}_{p}[x]$.
Constructing a primitive root $\bmod p^{j}$ when $p$ is prime: Let $a$ be a primitive root of $p$. If the order of $a \bmod p^{j}$ is $d$ then $a^{d} \equiv 1 \bmod p$, so $\phi(p) \mid d$, i.e. $(p-1) \mid d$. On the other hand, $d \mid \phi\left(p^{j}\right)$, therefore $d \mid(p-1) p^{j-1}$, therefore $d=(p-1) p^{k}$ for some $k \leq j-1$. To find a primitive root of $p^{j}$ we will find a primitive root of $p$ satisfying $k=j-1$.
Lemma: For an odd prime $p$ and an integer $z,(1+p z)^{p^{j}}=1+p^{j+1} Z$ where $Z \equiv z \bmod p$. For any integer $x,(1+2 x)^{2^{j}}=1+2^{j+2} y$ for some integer $y$ for $j \geq 1$.

Proof: We treat the odd prime case by induction on $j$. The base case $j=0$ is true. Now assume that $(1+p z)^{p^{j}}=1+p^{j+1} Z$ where $Z \equiv z \bmod p$. Raising both sides to the power $p$ we obtain

$$
(1+p z)^{p^{j+1}}=1+p^{j+2} Z+\sum_{i=2}^{p}\binom{p}{i} p^{(j+1) i} Z^{i}
$$

One can check that $p^{j+3}$ is a divisor of all the terms in the sum with a binomial coefficient, using the fact that $\left.p \left\lvert\, \begin{array}{l}p \\ i\end{array}\right.\right)$ when $0<i<p$ and the fact that $p \geq 3$. Writing $Z^{\prime}=Z+p^{-j-2} \sum_{i=2}^{p}\binom{p}{i} p^{(j+1) i} Z^{i}$ we have $(1+p z)^{p^{j+1}}=1+p^{j+2} Z^{\prime}$ and $Z^{\prime} \equiv Z \bmod p$.

We have $(1+2 x)^{2}=1+8\left(\frac{x+x^{2}}{2}\right)$. Assuming $(1+2 x)^{2^{j}}=1+2^{j+2} y$, we have

$$
(1+2 x)^{2^{j+1}}=\left(1+2^{j+2} y\right)^{2}=1+2^{j+3}\left(y+2^{j+1} y^{2}\right) \cdot / /
$$

Note that the lemma implies that there are no primitive roots mod $2^{j}$ for $j \geq 2$, since $(1+2 x)^{2 j-2} \equiv 1 \bmod 2^{j}$ 。
Now let $p$ be an odd prime and let $a$ be an integer such that $(a, p)=1$ and $a$ is a primitive root of $p$. Then $a^{p-1}=1+p y$ for some $y$. For any integer $x$, $a+p x$ is a primitive root of $p$ and

$$
\begin{gathered}
(a+p x)^{p-1}=a^{p-1}+(p-1) p x a^{p-2}+p^{2} Z= \\
1+p y+(p-1) p x a^{p-2}+p^{2} Z=1+p\left(y+(p-1) x a^{p-2}+p Z\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

Since $\left((p-1) a^{p-2}, p\right)=1$, we can find $x$ so that $y+(p-1) x a^{p-2}+p Z=Z^{\prime}$ for some $Z^{\prime}$ with $Z^{\prime} \equiv 1 \bmod p$. This implies that $a+p x$ is a primitive root $\bmod p^{j}$ : suppose that $a+p x$ has order $d \bmod p^{j}$. Then $d=(p-1) p^{k}$ for some $k \leq j-1$. We have

$$
(a+p x)^{(p-1) p^{k}}=\left(1+p Z^{\prime}\right)^{p^{k}}=1+p^{k+1} Z^{\prime \prime} \equiv 1 \bmod p^{j}
$$

where $Z^{\prime \prime} \equiv Z^{\prime} \equiv 1 \bmod p$. Since $p$ does not divide $Z^{\prime \prime}, 1+p^{j-1} Z^{\prime \prime} \equiv 1 \bmod$ $p^{j}$ implies $k+1 \geq j$, i.e. $k \geq j-1$. Hence $k=j-1, d=(p-1) p^{j-1}=\phi\left(p^{j}\right)$. Moduli that permit primitive roots: Suppose $n$ factors as $n=n_{1} n_{2}$ where $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}\right)=1$ and $n_{1}>2, n_{2}>2$. Then $\phi(n)=\phi\left(n_{1}\right) \phi\left(n_{2}\right)$ is even and, for any $a$ with $(a, n)=1, a^{\frac{1}{2} \phi(n)}=\left(a^{\phi\left(n_{1}\right)}\right)^{\frac{1}{2} \phi\left(n_{2}\right)} \equiv 1 \bmod n_{2}$ and $a^{\frac{1}{2} \phi(n)}=$ $\left(a^{\phi\left(n_{2}\right)}\right)^{\frac{1}{2} \phi\left(n_{1}\right)} \equiv 1 \bmod n_{1}$, hence $a^{\frac{1}{2} \phi(n)} \equiv 1 \bmod n$. So there are no primitive roots of $n$ in this case. The lemma implies that there are no primitive roots $\bmod 2^{j}$ for $j \geq 3$. This leaves $n=2,4,2 p^{j}$ where $p$ is an odd prime. There are primitive roots in each case: 1 is primitive $\bmod 2,3$ is primitive $\bmod 4$. Now let $a$ be primitive $\bmod p^{j}$. Then so is $a+p^{j}$, and the odd one of these is coprime with $2 p^{j}$. We have $\phi\left(2 p^{j}\right)=\phi\left(p^{j}\right)$, so either $a$ or $a+p^{j}$ is primitive $\bmod 2 p^{j}$.

## Section 3.7: Indices.

Let $g$ be a primitive root of $n$. Then

$$
\{1 \leq a \leq n-1:(a, n)=1\}=\left\{1, g, \ldots, g^{\phi(n)}-1\right\} \bmod n .
$$

We write $\operatorname{ind}(a)=i$ when $(a, n)=1$ and $a \equiv g^{i} \bmod n$. More generally, $a \equiv g^{l} \bmod n$ iff $l \equiv \operatorname{ind}(a) \bmod \phi(n)$. Properties include $\operatorname{ind}(a b) \equiv \operatorname{ind}(a)+$ $\operatorname{ind}(b) \bmod \phi(n)$ and, for $n>2, \operatorname{ind}(-1)=\frac{1}{2} \phi(n)$.
Example: solve $x^{5} \equiv 2 \bmod 7$. The number of distinct solutions to $x \bmod$ 7 is equal to the number of solutions to $\operatorname{ind}(x) \bmod 6$. We have $\operatorname{sind}(x) \equiv$ $\operatorname{ind}(2) \bmod 6$. Since $(5,6)=1$, there is a unique solution for $\operatorname{ind}(x) \bmod$ 6 , hence a unique solution for $x \bmod 7$ : Using the primitive root 3 we have $\operatorname{ind}(x) \equiv-\operatorname{ind}(2)=-2 \equiv 4, x \equiv 3^{4} \equiv 4$.

Now consider $n=2^{j}$ for $j \geq 3$. We can prove by induction that

$$
5^{2^{a}}=1+2^{a+2} k_{a}
$$

where $k_{a}$ is odd by induction on $a \geq 0$. This implies that $o(5)=2^{j-2} \bmod$ $2^{j}$ for $j \geq 3$. Moreover, $5^{a} \equiv 1 \bmod 4$ and $(-5)^{a} \equiv 3 \bmod 4$, which implies that $5^{a} \not \equiv(-5)^{b} \bmod 2^{j}$ when $j \geq 3$. So all numbers of the form $(-1)^{x} 5^{y}$, $0 \leq x \leq 1,0 \leq y \leq 2^{j-2}-1$, are distinct $\bmod 2^{j}$, and this accounts for all odd residue classes mod $2^{j}$. Hence every odd residue class mod $2^{j}$ has a unique expression of the form $(-1)^{x} 5^{y} \bmod 2$ in $x$ and $\bmod 2^{j-2}$ in $y$.

### 3.9 Exercises:

(i) This equivalent to solving $(x, x, x) \equiv(2,2,3) \bmod (3,5,7)$. Solution set using repeated substitution: $x=17+105 k$.
(ii) Write $a x=q_{x} n+r_{x}$ where $0 \leq r_{x}<n$. As $x$ runs through a set of reduced residues mod $n$, so does $r_{x}$. Moreover $\{a x / n\}=r_{x} / n$. So for $n \geq 2$ we obtain

$$
\frac{1}{n} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq r \leq n \\(r, n)=1}} r
$$

By Problem (iii) in Chapter 2, this sum is $\frac{\phi(n)}{2}$.
(iii) The contrapositive of this statement is that when $n$ is not prime then either $a^{n-1} \not \equiv 1 \bmod n$ or $a^{m} \equiv 1 \bmod n$ for some proper divisor of $n-1$. So assume $n$ is not prime and $a^{n-1} \equiv 1 \bmod n$. We must show $a^{m} \equiv 1$ $\bmod n$. Let the order of $a \bmod n$ be $d$. Then $d \mid(n-1)$ and $d \mid \phi(n)$. We can set $m=d$ provided we can show $\phi(n)<n-1$. This follows from $\phi(n)=\phi\left(n_{1}\right) \phi\left(n_{2}\right) \leq\left(n_{1}-1\right)\left(n_{2}-1\right) \leq n-3$ where $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}\right)=1, n_{1} n_{2}=n$, $n_{1}, n_{2} \geq 2$.
(iv) First suppose that $p>2$. Using indices,

$$
x^{p-1} \equiv 1 \bmod p^{j} \mathrm{iff}(p-1) \operatorname{ind}(x) \equiv 0 \bmod \phi\left(p^{j}\right) \text { iff } \operatorname{ind}(x) \equiv 0 \bmod p^{j-1} .
$$

There are $p-1$ solutions mod $p^{j}$, namely the multiples of $p^{j-1}$. When $p=2$ there is exactly one solution to $x \equiv 1 \bmod 2^{j}$.
(v) Let $g$ be a primitive root of $n$. Then it has order $\phi(n)$. If $g^{k}$ has order $d \bmod n$ then $d \mid \phi(n)$ and $\phi(n) \mid k d$, and if $(k, \phi(n))=1$ then $\phi(n) \mid d$ and so $d=\phi(n)$. Hence $(k, \phi(n))=1$ implies primitive. Moreover, if $(k, \phi(n))=$ $D>1$, write $k=k_{0} D, \phi(n)=\phi_{0} D$. Then $\left(g^{k}\right)^{\phi_{0}}=\left(g^{k_{0}}\right)^{\phi(n)}=1$, hence $g^{k}$ is not primitive. Hence $g^{k}$ is primitive iff $(k, \phi(n))=1$. This implies $\phi(\phi(n))$ primitive roots mod $n$, namely

$$
\left\{g^{k}: 1 \leq k \leq \phi(n) \text { and }(k, \phi(n))=1\right\}
$$

(vi) Let $g$ be a primitive root mod $p$. We have shown in problem (v) that the primitive roots $\bmod p$ are precisely $g^{k}$ where $1 \leq k \leq p-1$ and $(k, p-1)=1$. So we are evaluating

$$
\sum_{\substack{1 \leq k \leq p-1 \\(k, p-1)=1}} g^{k} .
$$

By our inclusion-exclusion sum formula of chapter 2 this is equal to

$$
\sum_{d \mid P} \mu(d) \sum_{a \in A_{d}} g^{a}
$$

where $p_{1}, \ldots, p_{r}$ are the primes dividing $p-1$,

$$
P=p_{1} p_{2} \cdots p_{r}
$$

and

$$
A_{d}=\{a \leq p-1: d \mid a\} .
$$

Given that

$$
n_{d}=\sum_{a \in A_{d}} g^{a}=g^{d}+g^{2 d}+\cdots+g^{p-1}
$$

we have $g^{d} n_{d} \equiv n_{d} \bmod p$, hence $\left(g^{d}-1\right) n_{d} \equiv 0 \bmod p$. For $d<p-1$ this forces $n_{d} \equiv 0 \bmod p$. This just leaves $\mu(p-1) n_{p-1}=\mu(p-1)$.
(vii) Using 3 as the primitive root of 7 , the equation is equivalent to $2 Y \equiv$ $5+3 X \bmod 6$, where $X$ and $Y$ are the indices of $x$ and $y$. Hence $X$ must be an odd number. Writing $X=1+2 X^{\prime}$ and substituting, the equation is $2 Y \equiv 2 \bmod 6$. Any $X^{\prime}$ will do, and we must have $Y \equiv 1 \bmod 3$. Hence $y=3^{1+3 a}, x=3^{1+2 b}$. In reduced form, $y=3 \cdot(-1)^{a}, x=3 \cdot 2^{b}$.
(viii) Let $m=1+\frac{1}{2}+\cdots+\frac{1}{p-1}$. Then $m=n / d$ where $n=(p-1)!m$ and $d=(p-1)$ !. Since $d$ is not divisible by $p$, it suffices to show that $n$ is divisible by $p^{2}$, for then any fraction equivalent to $m$ will have numerator divisible by $p^{2}$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
2 n= & (p-1)![((1 / 1)+(1 / p-1))+((1 / 2)+(1 / p-2))+\cdots+((1 / p-1)+(1 / 1))] \\
& =p(p-1)!(1 /(1(p-1))+1 /(2(p-2))+\cdots+(1 /((p-1) 1))) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Write

$$
M=(p-1)!(1 /(1(p-1))+1 /(2(p-2))+\cdots+(1 /((p-1) 1))) .
$$

It suffices to show that $M$ is divisible by $p$. We have

$$
\begin{gathered}
M \equiv(p-1)!\left(1^{-1}(p-1)^{-1}+2^{-1}(p-2)^{-1}+\cdots+(p-1)^{-1} 1^{-1}\right) \equiv \\
1^{-2}+2^{-2}+\cdots+(p-1)^{-2} \equiv 1^{2}+2^{2}+\cdots+(p-1)^{2}=\frac{(p-1) p(2 p-1)}{6} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Since $(p, 6)=1$ (we are given $p>3), 6 \mid(p-1)(2 p-1)$. Hence $M \equiv 0 \bmod$ $p$. NOTE: there is a proof in Hardy and Wright that involves this idea of pairing things off, but this sum of squares business is my idea.

## Chapter 4: Quadratic Residues

## Sections 4.1 and 4.2: Legendre's Symbol and Euler's Criterion

Solving $a x^{2}+b x+c \equiv 0 \bmod n$ requires solving $(2 a x+b)^{2} \equiv b^{2}-4 a c \bmod$ $4 a n$. We call $a$ a quadratic residue $\bmod n$ when there is a solution to $x^{2} \equiv a$ $\bmod n$. In other words, $\sqrt{a} \in \mathbb{Z}_{n}$.
Example: Recall that for an odd prime $p, \sqrt{-1} \in \mathbb{Z}_{p}$ if and only if $p \equiv 1$ $\bmod 4$, in which case we have $\sqrt{-1}= \pm\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)!$.
Let $p$ be an odd prime. Each of the numbers $1^{2}, 2^{2}, \ldots,\left(\frac{p-1}{2}\right)^{2}$ are quadratic residues $\bmod p$. They are distinct $\bmod p$ : given $i \neq j \in\left\{1,2, \ldots, \frac{p-1}{2}\right\}$, the factors $i-j$ and $i+j$ are not divisible by $p$, hence $i^{2}-j^{2}$ is not divisible by
$p$. Hence these numbers are the complete set of solutions to $x^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \bmod$ $p$. Since every $k \in\{1, \ldots, p-1\}$ satisfies $k^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv \pm 1 \bmod p, k$ is a non-zero quadratic residue $\bmod p$ if and only if $k^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \bmod p$. This gives rise to Euler's Criterion: for an odd prime $p$ and $(a, p)=1, a$ is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$ if and only if $a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1$. The Legendre symbol is

$$
\binom{a}{p}=\left\{\begin{array}{cc}
1 & a \text { is a quadratic residue } \bmod p \\
-1 & a \text { is not a quadratic residue } \bmod p
\end{array}\right\} \equiv a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \bmod p
$$

Note

$$
\left(\frac{a b}{p}\right) \equiv(a b)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} b^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)\left(\frac{b}{p}\right) \bmod p
$$

and since $p \geq 3$ and these symbols are $\pm 1$ this implies $\left(\frac{a b}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)\left(\frac{b}{p}\right)$.
Let $p$ be an odd prime and let $g$ be a primitive root of $p$. A complete set of non-zero quadratic residues $\bmod p$ is $\left\{g^{2}, g^{4}, \ldots, g^{p-1}\right\}$.

## Section 4.3: Gauss' Lemma

We wish to derive a formula for $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$ for an arbitrary odd prime $p$ that does not depend on computing $a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \bmod p$, which can be difficult when $p$ is large. Toward this end, observe that given an odd prime $p=2 r+1$, every integer $k$ is equivalent to a unique number in $\{-r,-r+1, \ldots,-1,0,1, \ldots, r-1\}$. To see this, use the division algorithm to write $k+r=d p+s$ where $0 \leq s \leq 2 r$. Then $k \equiv s-r \bmod p$ and $-r \leq s-r<r$. We will say that $k$ has a negative representation $\bmod p$ if $k \equiv s$ for some $s \in\{-r,-r+1, \ldots,-1\}$ where $p=2 r+1$. The number $s$ is called the numerically least residue of $k$ $\bmod p$.
Theorem: Let $p=2 r+1$ be an odd prime and let $(a, p)=1$. Then

$$
\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=(-1)^{n}
$$

where $n$ is the number of integers in the set $\{a, 2 a, \ldots, r a\}$ that have a negative representation $\bmod p$.
Proof: For each $i \in\{1,2, \ldots, r\}$ say that $i a \equiv a_{i} \bmod p$ where $a_{i} \in$ $\{-r,-r+1, \ldots, r-1\}$. Then $\left|a_{1}\right|,\left|a_{2}\right|, \ldots,\left|a_{r}\right|$ is a rearrangement of $1,2, \ldots, r$. Hence
$(r!) a^{r}=(1 a)(2 a) \cdots(r a) \equiv a_{1} a_{2} \cdots a_{r}=\left|a_{1}\right|\left|a_{2}\right| \cdots\left|a_{r}\right|(-1)^{n}=(r!)(-1)^{n} \bmod p$,

$$
\begin{gathered}
a^{r} \equiv(-1)^{n} \bmod p \\
\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \equiv(-1)^{n} \bmod p \\
\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)=(-1)^{n}
\end{gathered}
$$

Let's calculate $\left(\frac{2}{p}\right)$ for an odd prime $p$. Write $p=2 r+1$. Then

$$
\{-1,-2, \ldots,-r\} \equiv\{r+1, r+2, \ldots, 2 r-1\}
$$

$\bmod p$. Using $a=2$ we must determine

$$
n=|\{2,4, \ldots, 2 r\} \cap\{r+1, r+2, \ldots, 2 r-1\}| .
$$

If $r=2 k$ then
$n=|\{2,4, \ldots, 4 k\} \cap\{2 k+1,2 k+2, \ldots, 4 k\}|=|\{2 k+2,2 k+4, \ldots, 4 k\}|=k$
and

$$
\left(\frac{2}{4 k+1}\right)=(-1)^{k}
$$

If $r=2 k+1$ then $n=|\{2,4, \ldots, 4 k+2\} \cap\{2 k+2,2 k+3, \ldots, 4 k+2\}|=|\{2 k+2,2 k+4, \ldots, 4 k+2\}|=k+1$ and

$$
\left(\frac{2}{4 k+3}\right)=(-1)^{k+1}
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left(\frac{2}{8 j+1}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{4(2 j)+1}\right)=(-1)^{2 j}=1 \\
\left(\frac{2}{8 j+3}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{4(2 j)+3}\right)=(-1)^{2 j+1}=-1 \\
\left(\frac{2}{8 j+5}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{4(2 j+1)+1}\right)=(-1)^{2 j+1}=-1 \\
\left(\frac{2}{8 k+7}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{4(2 j+1)+3}\right)=(-1)^{2 j+2}=1
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence 2 is a quadratic residue $\bmod$ an odd prime $p$ iff $p \equiv 1,7 \bmod 8$ and 2 is a non-quadratic residue $\bmod p$ iff $p \equiv 3,5 \bmod 8$.

## Section 4.4: Law of Quadratic Reciprocity

Let $p$ and $q$ be distinct odd primes. The law of quadratic reciprocity is

$$
\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(q-1)}{4}} .
$$

This formula is useful for deciding whether or not a number is a quadratic residue. For example, we have $\left(\frac{5}{171}\right)\left(\frac{171}{5}\right)=(-1)^{4(170) / 4}=1$, therefore $\left(\frac{5}{171}\right)=\left(\frac{171}{5}\right) \equiv 171^{2} \equiv 1 \bmod 5$. Hence 5 is a quadratic residue $\bmod 171$.
Proof: For each integer $x$ there is a unique integer $y_{p q}(x)$ such that $x p-$ $y_{p q}(x) q \in(-q / 2, q / 2]$. We have

$$
\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)=(-1)^{\left|X_{p q}\right|}
$$

where

$$
X_{p q}=\left\{x \in(0, q / 2): x p-y_{p q}(x) q \in(-q / 2,0)\right\} \cap \mathbf{Z} .
$$

Note that for all $x \in X_{p q}, y_{p q}(x) \in(0, p / 2)$. Setting

$$
R_{p q}=\{(x, y) \in(0, q / 2) \times(0, p / 2): x p-y q \in(-q / 2,0)\} \cap \mathbf{Z}^{2}
$$

we have

$$
\left\{\left(x, y_{p q}(x)\right): x \in X_{p q}\right\}=R_{p q} .
$$

Therefore

$$
\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)=(-1)^{\left|R_{p q}\right|}
$$

Similarly, we have

$$
\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)=(-1)^{\left|R_{q p}\right|}
$$

where

$$
R_{q p}=\{(x, y) \in(0, p / 2) \times(0, q / 2): x q-y p \in(-p / 2,0)\} \cap \mathbf{Z}^{2} .
$$

Reversing the coordinates, this has the same size as the set

$$
R_{q p}^{\prime}=\{(x, y) \in(0, q / 2) \times(0, p / 2): x p-y q \in(0, p / 2)\} \cap \mathbf{Z}^{2} .
$$

The regions $R_{p q}$ and $R_{q p}^{\prime}$ correspond to the upper and lower intermediate regions of a rectangular diagram (see Figure 4.1 in the textbook). To determine the relationship between $\left|R_{p q}\right|$ and $\left|R_{q p}^{\prime}\right|$, first note that there is a bijection between the integer coordinates in the rectangle $(0, q / 2) \times(0, p / 2)$ to itself defined by

$$
(x, y) \mapsto\left(x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}\right)=\left(\frac{q+1-2 x}{2}, \frac{p+1-2 y}{2}\right) .
$$

Under this mapping we have

$$
x^{\prime} p-y^{\prime} q=-(x p-y q)+\frac{p-q}{2} .
$$

Hence $x p-q y \leq-(q / 2)$ if and only if $x^{\prime} p-y^{\prime} q \geq p / 2$. In other words, there are as many integer coordinates in the top-most region of the associated diagram as there are integer coordinates in the bottom-most region. Hence the total number of coordinates in the top and bottom region is an even number, and the number of coordinates in the entire rectangle is congruent mod 2 to the number of coordinates in the two intermediate regions, namely $\left|R_{p q}\right|+\left|R_{q p}^{\prime}\right|$. Hence

$$
\left|R_{p q}\right|+\left|R_{q p}^{\prime}\right| \equiv \frac{(p-1)(q-1)}{4} \bmod 2
$$

where the latter number is the number of integer coordinates in the rectangle $(0, q / 2) \times(0, p / 2)$. This implies

$$
\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(q-1)}{4}} .
$$

A second proof: Let $p$ and $q$ be distinct odd primes. Let $S$ be the set of all integers $x \in\left[1, \frac{p q-1}{2}\right]$ not divisible by $p$ or $q$. We have $\frac{p q-1}{2}=p \frac{q-1}{2}+\frac{p-1}{2}=$ $q \frac{p-1}{2}+\frac{q-1}{2}$, therefore

$$
\prod_{x \in S}[x]_{p}=\frac{\left([1]_{p}[2]_{p} \cdots[p-1]_{p}\right)^{\frac{q-1}{2}}[1]_{p}[2]_{p} \cdots\left[\frac{p-1}{2}\right]_{p}}{[q]_{p}[2 q]_{p} \cdots\left[\frac{p-1}{2} q\right]_{p}}=[-1]_{p}^{\frac{q-1}{2}}\left[\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)\right]_{p}
$$

and

$$
\prod_{x \in S}[x]_{q}=\frac{\left([1]_{q}[2]_{q} \cdots[q-1]_{q}\right)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}[1]_{q}[2]_{q} \cdots\left[\frac{q-1}{2}\right]_{q}}{[p]_{q}[2 p]_{q} \cdots\left[\frac{q-1}{2} p\right]_{q}}=[-1]_{q}^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\left[\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\right]_{q} .
$$

Write $\theta(x)=\left([x]_{p},[x]_{q}\right)$. Then

$$
\prod_{x \in S} \theta(x)=\left([-1]_{p}^{\frac{q-1}{2}}\left[\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)\right]_{p},[-1]_{q}^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\left[\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\right]_{q}\right)
$$

For each $(a, b) \in[p-1] \times\left[\frac{q-1}{2}\right]$ there exists a unique $x \in[p q-1]$ such that $\theta(x)=\left([a]_{p},[b]_{q}\right)$ by the Chinese Remainder Theorem. Moreover, exactly one of the two numbers $x$ and $p q-x$ belongs to $S$. Hence there is a unique $x(a, b) \in S$ and a unique $\epsilon(a, b) \in\{-1,1\}$ such that $\theta(x(a, b))=$ $\left([\epsilon(a, b) a]_{p},[\epsilon(a, b) b]_{q}\right)$. This implies

$$
S=\left\{x(a, b):(a, b) \in[p-1] \times\left[\frac{q-1}{2}\right]\right\}
$$

and

$$
\prod_{x \in S} \theta(x)=\left([\epsilon]_{p},[\epsilon]_{q}\right) \prod_{b=1}^{\frac{q-1}{2}} \prod_{a=1}^{p-1}\left([a]_{p},[b]_{q}\right)
$$

where

$$
\epsilon=\prod_{(a, b) \in[p-1] \times\left[\frac{q-1}{2}\right]} \epsilon(a, b) .
$$

We have

$$
\prod_{b=1}^{\frac{q-1}{2}} \prod_{a=1}^{p-1}[a]_{p}=[(p-1)!]_{p^{\frac{q-1}{2}}}=[-1]_{p^{\frac{q-1}{2}}}
$$

and

$$
\prod_{a=1}^{p-1} \prod_{b=1}^{\frac{q-1}{2}}[b]_{p}=\left[\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)!\right]_{q}^{p-1}
$$

We have

$$
[-1]_{q}=[(q-1)!]_{q}=\left[(-1)^{\frac{q-1}{2}}\right]_{q}\left[\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)!\right]_{q}^{2}
$$

therefore

$$
\left[\left(\frac{q-1}{2}\right)!\right]_{q}^{p-1}=\left[(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\right]_{q}\left[(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(q-1)}{4}}\right]_{q} .
$$

Hence

$$
\left([-1]_{p}^{\frac{q-1}{2}}\left[\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)\right]_{p},[-1]_{q^{\frac{p-1}{2}}}\left[\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\right]_{q}\right)=\left([\epsilon]_{p},[\epsilon]_{q}\right)\left([-1]_{p}^{\frac{q-1}{2}},\left[(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\right]_{q}\left[(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(q-1)}{4}}\right]_{q}\right) .
$$

This implies

$$
\left((-1)^{\frac{q-1}{2}}\left(\frac{q}{p}\right),(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)\right)=(\epsilon, \epsilon)\left((-1)^{\frac{q-1}{2}},(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(q-1)}{4}}\right)
$$

Comparing the products of the two coordinates, this implies

$$
\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(q-1)}{4}} .
$$

## Section 5: Jacobi's Symbol

Let $n$ be a positive odd integer and let $n=p_{1} \cdots p_{k}$ be a factorization into primes. Then

$$
\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)= \begin{cases}\left(\frac{a}{p_{1}}\right) \cdots\left(\frac{a}{p_{k}}\right) & (a, n)=1 \\ 0 & (a, n)>1\end{cases}
$$

Properties:

1. $\left(\frac{a b}{n}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)\left(\frac{b}{n}\right)$.
2. When $(a, m n)=1,\left(\frac{a}{m n}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{m}\right)\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$. (True even when $(a, m n)>1$.)
3. $\left(\frac{-1}{n}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{n-1}{2}}$.
4. $\left(\frac{2}{n}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{n^{2}-1}{8}}$.
5. If $m$ and $n$ are odd and $(m, n)=1,\left(\frac{m}{n}\right)\left(\frac{n}{m}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{(m-1)(n-1)}{4}}$.
6. If $a$ is a quadratic residue $\bmod n$ then $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)=1$. Hence if $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)=-1$ then $a$ is not a quadratic residue $\bmod n$.

Reasons: (1) by the same property of the Legrende symbol, (2) by prime factorization, (3) by induction on $l(n)$, (4) by induction on $l(n)$, (5) by induction on $l(m)+l(n)$, where $l(m)$ is the number of primes in the prime factorization of $m$, (6) by the lemma and corollary below.

Lemma: Let $p$ be an odd prime. If $(a, p)=1$ and $a$ is a quadratic residue of $a \bmod p$ then it is a quadratic residue of $p^{k}$ for all $k$.

Proof: By induction on $k$. The base case $k=1$ is trivial. Now assume $x^{2} \equiv a \bmod p^{k}$ has a solution. Write $x^{2}=a+\alpha p^{k}$. Set $y=x+\beta p^{k}$. Then

$$
y^{2}=x^{2}+2 x \beta p^{k}+\beta^{2} p^{2 k} \equiv a+\alpha p^{k}+2 x \beta p^{k} \bmod p^{k+1}
$$

We wish to find $\beta$ such that

$$
\alpha p^{k}+2 x \beta p^{k} \equiv 0 \bmod p^{k+1},
$$

or equivalently

$$
\alpha+2 x \beta \equiv 0 \bmod p .
$$

There is a solution because $(2 x, p)=1$.
Corollary: Let $n=p_{1}^{e_{1}} \cdots p_{k}^{e_{k}}$ be a product of odd primes. Let $(a, n)=1$. Then $a$ is a quadratic residue $\bmod n$ iff $a$ is a quadratic residue $\bmod p_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$.

Proof: If $x^{2} \equiv a \bmod n$ then $x^{2} \equiv a \bmod p_{i}$ for each $i$. Conversely, suppose that for each $i \leq k$ there is an $x_{i}$ such that $x_{i}^{2} \equiv a \bmod p_{i}$. By the corollary there is a $y_{i}$ such that $y_{i}^{2} \equiv a \bmod p_{i}^{e_{i}}$ for each $i \leq k$. By the Chinese Remainder Theorem, there is a $z$ such that $z \equiv y_{i} \bmod p_{i}^{e_{i}}$ for each $i$. This implies $z^{2} \equiv a \bmod p_{i}^{e_{i}}$ for each $i$, which implies $z^{2} \equiv a \bmod n$.

## Section 4.7 Exercises:

(i) $\left(\frac{5}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{p}{5}\right) \equiv p^{2} \bmod 5$. Hence we need $p \equiv 1,4 \bmod 5$.
(ii) To decide if 2 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p^{\prime}$ we evaluate $2^{p} \bmod p^{\prime}$. On the other hand, since $p=3+4 k, p^{\prime}=7+8 k$, we know that 2 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p^{\prime}$. Hence $2^{p} \equiv 1 \bmod p^{\prime}$. Hence $2^{p}-1$ is not prime since it has proper divisor $p^{\prime}$. We have also proved that 2 is primitive $\bmod p^{\prime}$.
(iii) Let $g$ be a primitive root of $p$. The quadratic residue product is $P=$ $g^{2} g^{4} \cdots g^{p-1}=g^{\frac{p^{2}-1}{4}}=\left(g^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\right)^{\frac{p+1}{2}}=h^{\frac{p+1}{2}}$ where $h=g^{\frac{p-1}{2}}$. Since $h^{2} \equiv 1$, $h \equiv \pm 1$. But $h \not \equiv 1$ since $g$ has order $p-1$, hence $h \equiv-1$ and $P \equiv(-1)^{\frac{p+1}{2}}$.
(iv) We have $\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}=1$ since $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4$. Hence -1 is a quadratic residue. This implies that whenever $r$ is a quadratic residue, so is $-r$. There is a one-to-one correspondence between quadratic residues $\leq p / 2$ and quadratic residues $\geq p / 2$ via $r \leftrightarrow p-r$. There are $\frac{p-1}{2}$ quadratic residues, every pair of which sums to $p$. Since there are $\frac{p-1}{4}$ pairs, the sum of them all is $\frac{p-1}{4} \cdot p$.
(v) Use the properties repeatedly.
(vi) When $(d, p)>1, d \equiv 0$ and there is exactly one solution, consistent with the formula. When $(d, p)=1$ and $d$ is not a quadratic residue then
there are no solutions, which is consistent with the formula. When $(d, p)=1$ and $d$ is a quadratic residue, then $x^{2}-d$ has a root $r$, and we can write $x^{2}-d \equiv(x-r)(x-s)$ in $F_{p}[x]$. If $r \equiv s$ then $x^{2}-d \equiv x^{2}-2 r x+r^{2}$ hence $r \equiv 0, d \equiv 0$ : contradiction. Hence there are two solutions, consistent with the formula.
(vii) Since $(a, p)=(2, p)=(4, p)=1$, we can divide by $a, 2,4$ in $F_{p}$. We have

$$
a x^{2}+b x+c=(1 / a)\left((a x+b / 2)^{2}-d / 4\right),
$$

hence

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left(\frac{f(x)}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{1 / a}{p}\right)\left(\frac{(a x+b / 2)^{2}-d / 4}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)\left(\frac{(a x+b / 2)^{2}-d / 4}{p}\right), \\
\sum_{x=1}^{p}\left(\frac{f(x)}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \sum_{x=1}^{p}\left(\frac{(a x+b / 2)^{2}-d / 4}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \sum_{x=1}^{p}\left(\frac{x^{2}-d / 4}{p}\right) \\
=\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \sum_{x=1}^{p}\left(\frac{x^{2}+d}{p}\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

When $d=0$ this evaluates to $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)(p-1)$. Now consider $d \neq 0$. Since $1+\left(\frac{k^{2}+d}{p}\right)$ counts the number of solutions to $x^{2}-k^{2}=d$,

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{p}\left[1+\left(\frac{k^{2}+d}{p}\right)\right]
$$

is the size of the set $\left\{(a, b) \in F_{p} \times F_{p}: a^{2}-b^{2}=d\right\}$. This is in 1:1 correpondence with the set $\{(u, v): u v=d / 4\}$, and the size of the latter set is $p-1$. Hence

$$
\sum_{k=1}^{p}\left(\frac{k^{2}+d}{p}\right)=-1
$$

(viii) To show that 2 is a primitive root $\bmod p$ we must show that $o(2)=p-1$. We have $p-1=2 p^{\prime}$, which has divisors $1,2, p^{\prime}, 2 p^{\prime}$. Therefore the order of $2 \bmod p$ is one of these numbers. We can rule out 1 and 2 since $p \geq 11$. Moreover if $o(2)=p^{\prime}$ then $2^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \bmod p$, which implies that 2 is a quadratic
residue $\bmod p$, which contradicts the fact that $p \equiv 3 \bmod 8$. Therefore $o(2)=2 p^{\prime}=p-1$ and 2 is primitive.
Now $5^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv 1 \bmod p$ if and only if $p \equiv 1,4 \bmod 5$ by problem (i), hence $5^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \equiv-1 \bmod p$ if and only if $p \equiv 2,3 \bmod 5$ if and only if $p^{\prime} \equiv 1,3 \bmod$ 5. For these primes we have $o(5) \in\{1,2, p-1\} \bmod p$. We can rule out $o(5)=1,2$ by a direct inspection of $p=7$ and $p=23$. The next smallest $p$ is 47 , and the order of 5 in this case is 46 .
(ix) If $p=2$ then we can easily solve $a x+b y \equiv c \bmod 2$, hence $a x^{2}+b y^{2} \equiv c$ mod 2. Now assume that $p$ is an odd prime. We are attempting to show that $\left(\frac{-(a / b) x^{2}+(c / b)}{p}\right)=1$ for some $x$. Now if $-(a / b) x^{2}+(c / b) \equiv 0$ for some $x$ then $x^{2} \equiv c / a$, hence $(x, 0)$ is a solution to $a x^{2}+b y^{2} \equiv c$. Now assume that $-(a / b) x^{2}+(c / b) \not \equiv 0$ for all $x$. Since the discriminant of this polynomial is $4 a c / b^{2} \not \equiv 0$, we know by problem (vii) that

$$
\sum_{x=1}^{p}\left(\frac{-(a / b) x^{2}+(c / b)}{p}\right)=-\left(\frac{-(a / b)}{p}\right)= \pm 1
$$

This implies that some $-(a / b) x^{2}+(c / b)$ is a quadratic residue, otherwise the sum would be $-p$.

## Generalized Lagrange Theorem

Theorem: Let $f\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}_{p}\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]$ be a polynomial with degree $\leq p-1$ in each variable $x_{i}$. Assume that $f\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)=0$ for all $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \in \mathbb{Z}_{p}^{n}$. Then all the coefficients of $f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ are equal to zero.
Proof: By induction on $n$. First consider $n=1$. Then $f\left(x_{1}\right)$ has roots $0,1, \ldots, p-1$, therefore $f\left(x_{1}\right)=g\left(x_{1}\right) \prod_{i=0}^{p-1}\left(x_{1}-i\right)$ for some polynomial $g\left(x_{1}\right)$. If $g\left(x_{1}\right)$ has a non-zero coefficient then we can write $g\left(x_{1}\right)=g_{a} x_{1}^{a}+$ terms of lower degree where $g_{a} \neq 0$. This implies that $f\left(x_{1}\right)$ has degree $\geq p+a$, contrary to hypothesis. Hence $g\left(x_{1}\right)$ has all zero coefficients, which implies that $f\left(x_{1}\right)$ has all zero coefficients.
Assume that the statement of the theorem is true for some $n \geq 1$. Let $f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}\right)$ be a polynomial that meets the hypothesis of the theorem. We will show that all the coefficients of $f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}\right)$ are equal to zero.

We can write

$$
f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n+1}\right)=\sum_{i=0}^{p-1} f_{i}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) x_{n+1}^{i}
$$

Fixing $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}$, the polynomial $\sum_{i=0}^{p-1} f_{i}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) x_{n+1}^{i}$ has $p$ roots, hence each coefficient $f_{i}\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)$ is equal to zero. Now let $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}$ vary and use the induction hypothesis to show that $f_{i}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)=0$ for $0 \leq i \leq p-1$.
(x) Let $f\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ be a polynomial that vanishes only at $(0,0, \ldots, 0)$. We will show that the total degree of $f$ is $\geq n$. Note that $1-f^{p-1}$ vanishes at every non-trivial $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ and evaluates to 1 at $(0, \ldots, 0)$. So $1-f^{p-1}$ is the same function as $h=\left(1-x_{1}^{p-1}\right) \cdots\left(1-x_{n}^{p-1}\right)$ from $\mathbb{Z}_{p}^{n}$ to $\mathbb{Z}_{p}$. Let $g$ be the polynomial functionally equal to $1-f^{p-1}$ by repeatedly replacing every instance of $x_{i}^{k}$ with $k \geq p$ in $1-f^{p-1}$ by $x_{i}^{k-p+1}$. The is possible because $x_{i}^{p}$ and $x_{i}$ are functionally equal. Then $g-h$ vanishes on $\mathbb{Z}_{p}^{n}$ and every variable has exponent at most $p-1$. By the generalized Lagrange theorem (above), $g-h=0$, hence $g=h$, hence has total degree $(p-1) n$. This implies that the total degree of $1-f^{p-1}$ is $\geq(p-1) n$, hence the total degree of $f$ is $\geq n$.
(xi) A special case of (x).

## Chapter 5: Quadratic Forms

## Section 5.1: Equivalence

Quadratic form:

$$
f(x, y)=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2} .
$$

In matrix form:

$$
f(v)=v^{T}\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a & b / 2 \\
b / 2 & c
\end{array}\right] v
$$

The discriminant of a quadratic form is $d(f)=b^{2}-4 a c$. When $f(v)=v^{T} F v$ we have $d(f)=-4 \operatorname{det}(F)$. We will say that forms $f$ and $g$ are equivalent if $f(v)=g(U v)$ for some $2 \times 2$ integer matrix $U$ with determinant 1 (unimodular matrix). In other words, $f=g \circ U$. This is an equivalence relation: $f(v)=f(I v) ; f(v)=g(U v)$ implies $f\left(U^{-1} v\right)=g(v)$; $f(v)=g\left(U_{1} v\right)$ and $g(v)=h\left(U_{2} v\right)$ implies $f(v)=h\left(U_{2} U_{1} v\right)$. Equivalent forms have the same discriminant: given $f(v)=g(U v)$ and $g(v)=v^{T} G v$ we have $f(v)=v^{T}\left(U^{T} G U\right) v$, hence $F=U^{T} G U$, hence $\operatorname{det}(F)=\operatorname{det}(G)$. Equivalent forms produce the same set of output values. Note also that $4 a f(x, y)=(2 a x+b y)^{2}-d y^{2}$, hence when $d<0$ the output values of $f$ are all $\leq 0$ when $a<0$ and all $\geq 0$ when $a>0$. Moreover the only zero output occurs when $x=y=0$.

More facts about forms:

1. If $f=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ then $(f \circ U)=f(p, r) x^{2}+b^{\prime} x y+f(q, s) y^{2}$ where $U=\left[\begin{array}{ll}p & q \\ r & s\end{array}\right]$.
2. Let $U_{k}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}1 & k \\ 0 & 1\end{array}\right]$ and $V=\left[\begin{array}{cc}0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0\end{array}\right]$. If $f=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ then $f \circ U_{k}=a x^{2}+(b+2 a k) x y+\left(a k^{2}+b k+c\right) y^{2}$ and $f \circ V=c x^{2}-b x y+a y^{2}$.
3. Let $f$ be a form with $a>0$ and $d<0$ and having minimum positive output $a_{\text {min }}$ using integer inputs. Then we can produce an equivalent form $g=a_{\text {min }} x^{2}+\cdots$. To find $a_{\text {min }}$, proceed as follows (following Niven and Zuckerman): Given any output $m$, check all $(x, y)$ such that $f(x, y)<m$, i.e. solve

$$
\frac{(2 a x+b y)^{2}-d y^{2}}{4 a}<m .
$$

This requires

$$
y^{2}<\frac{4 a m}{-d}
$$

which has a finite number of solutions in $y$. Given $y$ in this range, we hunt for integers $x$ such that

$$
(2 a x+b y)^{2}<4 a m+d y^{2}
$$

and there are finitely many values of $x$ to check for each $y$. Having found ( $p, r$ ) such that $f(p, r)=a_{\text {min }}$, the fact that $f$ is homogeneous implies that $\operatorname{gcd}(p, r)=1$. Hence there exist integers $q, s$ such that $U=\left[\begin{array}{ll}p & q \\ r & s\end{array}\right]$ has determinant 1 . We set $g=f \circ U$.
Example: Consider $f(x, y)=37 x^{2}+59 x y+25 y^{2}$. The discriminant is -219 . Some outputs are $\{37,37-59+25,25\}$, the least of which is $m=3$. Solving $y^{2}<148 / 219$ we have $y=0$. Number of non-zero solutions to $4 a x^{2}<4 a m$ : none. So the smallest output is $3=f(1,-1)$. We set

$$
g=f \circ\left[\begin{array}{cc}
1 & 3 \\
-1 & -2
\end{array}\right]=3 x^{2}+27 x y+79 y^{2} .
$$

## Section 5.2: Reduction

From here on out we are going to consider $f(x, y)=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ where $a>0$ and $d<0$. This forces $c>0$ since $b^{2}<4 a c$. We will show that every
such form is equivalent to $A x^{2}+B x y+C y^{2}$ where $-A<B \leq A<C$ or $0 \leq B \leq A=C$. We call such forms reduced, and we will show that distinct reduced forms are inequivalent.
Given $f(x, y)=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$, let $g(x, y)=a_{0} x^{2}+b_{0} x y+c_{0} y^{2}$ be any form equivalent to $f(x, y)$ where $a_{0}$ is the minimum positive output of $f$. Now choose $k$ so that $-a_{0}<b_{0}+2 k a_{0} \leq a_{0}$ (division algorithm applied to $b+a-1$ and $2 a$ ). Then we obtain the equivalent form $h(x, y)=a_{0} x^{2}+$ $\left(b_{0}+2 k a_{0}\right) x y+\left(a_{0} k^{2}+b_{0} k+c_{0}\right) y^{2}$. Since $a_{0} k^{2}+b_{0} k+c_{0}$ is an output of $h$, it is an output of $f$, hence $a_{0} \leq a_{0} k^{2}+b_{0} k+c_{0}$. This is reduced if $a_{0}<a_{0} k^{2}+b_{0} k+c_{0}$, and if $a_{0}=a_{0} k^{2}+b_{0} k+c_{0}$ and $b_{0}+2 k a_{0}<0$ then the equivalent form $k(x, y)=a_{0} x^{2}-\left(b_{0}+2 k a_{0}\right) x y+a_{0} y^{2}$ is reduced.
Example: We have already shown that $f(x, y)=37 x^{2}+59 x y+25 y^{2}$ has minimum output 3 and is equivalent to $3 x^{2}+27 x y+79 y^{2}$. In order to subtract 24 from 3 we will compose with $U_{-4}$. This yields

$$
h(x, y)=\left(3 x^{2}+27 x y+79 y^{2}\right) \circ\left[\begin{array}{cc}
1 & -8 \\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right]=3 x^{2}+3 x y+19 y^{2} .
$$

We now show that distinct reduced forms are inequivalent. Let $f(x, y)=$ $a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ and $g(x, y)=A x^{2}+B x y+C y^{2}$ be reduced quadratic forms with $a, A>0$ and the same discriminant $d<0$. We will show that if they are equivalent then $a=A, b=B$, and $c=C$. Since they are equivalent, they have the same outputs. For $x^{2} \geq y^{2}>0$ we have

$$
f(x, y) \geq a x^{2}-|b| x^{2}+c y^{2}=(a-|b|) x^{2}+c y^{2} \geq c
$$

and for $y^{2} \geq x^{2}>0$ we have

$$
f(x, y) \geq a x^{2}-|b| y^{2}+c y^{2}=a x^{2}+(c-|b|) y^{2} \geq a+c-|b| \geq c .
$$

We also have

$$
f(x, 0)=a x^{2} \geq a
$$

and

$$
f(0, y)=c y^{2} \geq c
$$

for $x, y \neq 0$. Therefore the five smallest outputs of $f$ are $0, a, a, c, c$ and similarly the five smallest outputs of $g$ are $0, A, A, C, C$. This implies $a=A$ and $c=C$, which implies $b= \pm B$ since the discriminants are equal. We
must prove $B=-b$ implies $b=B=0$. This is clear if $a=c$ since the forms are reduced, so we can assume $a<c$.

Suppose $f(x, y)=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}, g(x, y)=a x^{2}-b x y+c y^{2}, b \geq 0, a<c$, and $f(v)=g(U v)$ where $U=\left[\begin{array}{ll}p & q \\ r & s\end{array}\right]$. We wish to show $U=I$ and $b=0$. We must have $a>b$ given $-a<|b| \leq a$. If $p r \neq 0$ then we have $c>a=$ $f(1,0)=g(p, r) \geq C=c$, which is impossible. Therefore $p=0$ or $r=0$. If $q s \neq 0$ then we have $c=f(0,1)=g(q, s)>c$, which is impossible. Given $F=U^{T} G U$ and

$$
F=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a & b / 2 \\
b / 2 & c
\end{array}\right]
$$

and

$$
G=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a & -b / 2 \\
-b / 2 & c
\end{array}\right],
$$

we obtain

$$
F \in\left\{\left[\begin{array}{cc}
c r^{2} & -(b / 2) q r \\
-(b / 2) q r & a q^{2}
\end{array}\right],\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a p^{2} & (-b / 2) p s \\
(-b / 2) p s & c s^{2}
\end{array}\right]\right\} .
$$

The first possibility contradicts $a=c$. The second possibility implies that $b=-b$ since $p s=1$, hence $b=0$.

There are finitely many reduced forms $h(d)$ with $a>0$ and $d<0$ : We have $-a \leq b \leq a \leq c$, hence $b^{2} \leq a c$, hence $-d=4 a c-b^{2} \geq 3 a c,|b| \leq a \leq c \leq$ $-d / 3 a \leq-d / 3$, hence there are finitely many choices for $a, b$, and $c$.

Example: $x^{2}+y^{2}$ is reduced and satisfies $d=-4$. The equivalent reduced forms $a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ satisfy $|b| \leq a \leq c \leq 4 / 3$, which forces $a=c=1$ and $b=0$. In other words, $x^{2}+y^{2}$ is the unique reduced form with discriminant -4 .

Note that $c=\frac{b^{2}-d}{4 a}$. Reducing $|b|$ reduces $c$ when $a$ is unchanged. This leads to another algorithm for finding reducing a form and for finding $a_{\text {min }}$ given an arbitrary form with $a>0$ and $d<0$ : If the form is reduced then $a_{\text {min }}=a$. If the form is not reduced, then either (1) $a>c$ or (2) $a=c$ and $b>a$ or (3) $a=c$ and $b<0$ or (4) $a<c$ and $b>a$ or (5) $a<c$ and $b \leq-a$. The following actions either lower $\left[x^{2}\right]$ or identify a reduced form:
(1) $a>c$ : Apply $V$, lowering $\left[x^{2}\right]$.
(2) $a=c$ and $b>a$ : We have $b>b-2 a>-a>-b$. Find the largest $k \geq 1$ such that $b-2 k a>-b$, such that $|b-2 k a|<|b|$, then apply $U_{k}$, then apply $V$, lowering $\left[x^{2}\right]$.
(3) $a=c$ and $b<0$ : If $b \geq-a$ then applying $V$ produces a reduced form. But if $b<-a$ then $b<b+2 a<a<-b$, and there is a largest $k \geq 1$ such that $b<b+2 k a<-b$. Apply $U_{k}$, then $V$. Summarizing: Find the largest $k \geq 0$ such that $|b+2 k a|<|b|$, then apply $U_{k}$, then apply $V$, either producing a reduced form or lowering $\left[x^{2}\right]$.
(4) $a<c$ and $b>a$ : Applying $U_{-1}$ leads to $b>b-2 a>-a>-b$. Find the largest value of $k \geq 1$ such that $|b-2 k a|<|b|$, then apply $U_{-k}$, then $V$, lowering $\left[x^{2}\right]$.
(5) $a<c$ and $b \leq-a$ : Applying $U_{1}$ leads to $b+2 a \leq a \leq-b$. Find the largest $k \geq 1$ such that $|b+2 k a| \leq|b|$, then apply $U_{k}$, then $V$, either producing a reduced form or lowering $\left[x^{2}\right]$.

## Section 5.3: Representations by Binary Forms

Definition: Let $a$ be a natural number. We say that $a$ is properly represented by the binary form $f$ iff $a=f(p, r)$ for some coprime pair $p$ and $r$. For example, if $f(x, y)=37 x^{2}+59 x y+25 y^{2}$ then $f(4,-3)=109$ hence 109 is properly represented by $f$.

Theorem: A necessary and sufficient condition that $a$ be properly represented by a binary form with discriminant $d$ is that $b^{2} \equiv d \bmod 4 a$ has a solution. In other words, $d$ is a quadratic residue $\bmod 4 a$.

Proof: Suppose $b^{2} \equiv d \bmod 4 a$. Then $b^{2}-d=4 a c$ for some $c$, therefore $b^{2}-4 a c=d$. Setting $f(x, y)=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ we have $d(f)=d$ and $a=f(1,0)$.

Conversely, suppose $a=f(p, r)$ where $(p, r)=1$. Then $a=g(1,0)$ where $g(v)=f(U v)$ and $U=\left[\begin{array}{ll}p & q \\ r & s\end{array}\right]$. We know that $g(x, y)=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ for some $b$ and $c$, therefore $d=d(f)=d(g)=b^{2}-4 a c \equiv b^{2} \bmod 4 a$.

Example: we will determine the primes representable as a sum of two squares. We have $2=1^{2}+1^{2}$. The odd primes are of the form $4 n+1$ and $4 n+3$. No prime of the form $4 n+3$ can be represented as a sum of 2 squares, because the latter is congruent to 0,1 , or $2 \bmod 4$. When $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4,-1$ is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$, hence -4 is a quadratic residue $\bmod 4 p$, hence $p$
can be properly represented by a form with discriminant -4 , hence by a reduced form with discriminant -4 . Since $x^{2}+y^{2}$ is the unique reduced form with discriminant $-4, p$ can be properly represented by $x^{2}+y^{2}$.

Example: Primes of the form $4 n+3$ are 3, 7, 11, 19, $\ldots$ and primes of the form $4 n+1$ are of the form $5,13,17, \ldots$. Setting

$$
f(n)=\left\{\sqrt{n^{2}-x^{2}}: 0 \leq x \leq \sqrt{n / 2}\right\}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
f(3)=\{1.73205,1.41421\} \\
f(7)=\{2.64575,2.44949\} \\
f(11)=\{3.31662,3.16228,2.64575\}, \\
f(19)=\{4.3589,4.24264,3.87298,3.16228\}, \\
f(5)=\{2.23607,2 .\} \\
f(13)=\{3.60555,3.4641,3 .\} \\
f(17)=\{4.12311,4 ., 3.60555\}
\end{gathered}
$$

## Section 5.4: Sums of Two Squares

Necessary Conditions: Suppose $x^{2}+y^{2}$ is divisible by an odd prime $p$. Then $x^{2} \equiv-y^{2} \bmod p$, hence $(y, p)=1$ implies $(x / y)^{2} \equiv-1 \bmod p$ implies $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4$. So if $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$ then $p \mid y$, which implies $p \mid x$, which $p^{2} \mid\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)$. Hence in the prime factorization of $x^{2}+y^{2}$, primes $\equiv 3 \bmod 4$ occur to even exponent.

Sufficient Conditions: Suppose $n$ is any arbitrary number with this property. Write $n=n_{0}^{2} p_{1} p_{2} \cdots p_{k}$, the $p_{i}$ distinct primes. Then $p_{i} \equiv 1 \bmod 4$ (or $p_{i}=2$ ) for each $i$, hence $x_{i}^{2} \equiv-1 \bmod p_{i}$ has a solution for each $i$, hence by the Chinese remainder theorem $b^{2} \equiv-1 \bmod p_{1} \cdots p_{k}$ has a solution, hence $(2 b) \equiv-4 \bmod 4 p_{1} \cdots p_{k}$ has a solution, hence $p_{1} \cdots p_{k}$ is representable by a binary quadratic form with discriminant -4 , hence by a reduced form with this discriminant, which can only be $x^{2}+y^{2}$. So we have $p_{1} \cdots p_{k}=x^{2}+y^{2}$, $n=n_{0}^{2} p_{1} \cdots p_{k}=n_{0}^{2}\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)=\left(n_{0} x\right)^{2}+\left(n_{0} y\right)^{2}$.
A second proof: Write each $p_{i}$ in the form $x_{i}^{2}+y_{i}^{2}$ and use the fact that the set of sums of squares is closed with respect to multiplication:

$$
\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}\right)=\left|x_{1}+y_{1} i\right|^{2}\left|x_{2}+y_{2} i\right|^{2}=\left|\left(x_{1}+y_{1} i\right)\left(x_{2}+y_{2} i\right)\right|^{2}=
$$

$$
\left|\left(x_{1} x_{2}-y_{1} y_{2}\right)+\left(x_{1} y_{2}+x_{2} y_{1}\right) i\right|^{2}=\left(x_{1} x_{2}-y_{1} y_{2}\right)^{2}+\left(x_{1} y_{2}+x_{2} y_{1}\right)^{2} .
$$

Example:

$$
\begin{aligned}
1485154=2 \cdot 11^{2} \cdot 17 \cdot 19^{2}= & \left(1^{2}+1^{2}\right)\left(4^{2}+1\right) 11^{2} 19^{2}=\left(3^{2}+5^{2}\right) 11^{2} 19^{2}= \\
& 627^{2}+1045^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

## Section 5.5: Sums of Four Squares

The set of sums of four square integers is closed with respect to multiplication: using quaternions,

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left(x_{1}^{2}+x_{2}^{2}+x_{3}^{2}+x_{4}^{2}\right)\left(y_{1}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}+y_{3}^{2}+y_{4}^{2}\right)=\left|x_{1}-x_{2} i-x_{3} j-x_{4} k\right|^{2}\left|y_{1}+y_{2} i+y_{3} j+y_{4} k\right|^{2}= \\
\mid\left(x_{1} y_{1}+x_{2} y_{2}+x_{3} y_{3}+x_{4} y_{4}\right)+\left(x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}-x_{3} y_{4}+x_{4} y_{3}\right) i+ \\
\left(x_{1} y_{3}+x_{2} y_{4}-x_{3} y_{1}-x_{4} y_{2}\right) j+\left.\left(x_{1} y_{4}-x_{2} y_{3}+x_{3} y_{2}-x_{4} y_{1}\right) k\right|^{2}= \\
\left(x_{1} y_{1}+x_{2} y_{2}+x_{3} y_{3}+x_{4} y_{4}\right)^{2}+\left(x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}-x_{3} y_{4}+x_{4} y_{3}\right)^{2}+ \\
\left(x_{1} y_{3}+x_{2} y_{4}-x_{3} y_{1}-x_{4} y_{2}\right)^{2}+\left(x_{1} y_{4}-x_{2} y_{3}+x_{3} y_{2}-x_{4} y_{1}\right)^{2} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Another derivation: Let $z$ and $w$ be complex numbers. Then

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
z & w \\
\bar{w} & \bar{z}
\end{array}\right]
$$

has a determinant which is a sum of four squares. The product of two such matrices has a similar form, and $\operatorname{det}(A B)=\operatorname{det}(A) \operatorname{det}(B)$, hence a product of two sums of four squares is a sum of four squares.

The numbers 1 and 2 can be expressed as the sum of four squares. If we can show that every odd prime can be expressed as the sum of four squares, then every natural number can be.

Observation 1: If $n$ is a sum of four squares and $n$ is even then $\frac{n}{2}$ is a sum of four squares. This follows from the identity

$$
\frac{a^{2}+b^{2}+c^{2}+d^{2}}{2}=\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{a-b}{2}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{c+d}{2}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{c-d}{2}\right)^{2}
$$

grouping together numbers of equal parity.
Observation 2: If

$$
\begin{gathered}
n= \\
\left(x_{1} y_{1}+x_{2} y_{2}+x_{3} y_{3}+x_{4} y_{4}\right)^{2}+\left(x_{1} y_{2}-x_{2} y_{1}-x_{3} y_{4}+x_{4} y_{3}\right)^{2}+ \\
\left(x_{1} y_{3}+x_{2} y_{4}-x_{3} y_{1}-x_{4} y_{2}\right)^{2}+\left(x_{1} y_{4}-x_{2} y_{3}+x_{3} y_{2}-x_{4} y_{1}\right)^{2}
\end{gathered}
$$

and $m^{2} \mid n$ and $x_{i} \equiv y_{i} \bmod m$ for $i=1,2,3,4$ then each of the squares in the sum is divisible by $m^{2}$.
Observation 3: If $m$ is odd and $m N$ is an odd sum of four squares and $m>1$ then $m^{\prime} N$ is a sum of four squares for some $m^{\prime}$ satisfying $1 \leq m^{\prime}<m$. Proof: write $m N=a^{2}+b^{2}+c^{2}+d^{2}$ and choose $a_{0}, b_{0}, c_{0}, d_{0} \in(-m / 2, m / 2]$ such that $(a, b, c, d) \equiv\left(a_{0}, b_{0}, c_{0}, d_{0}\right) \bmod m$. Set $n=a_{0}^{2}+b_{0}^{2}+c_{0}^{2}+d_{0}^{2}$. Then $n<4 \frac{m^{2}}{4}=m^{2}$. We have $n \equiv m N \equiv 0 \bmod m$, hence $n=m_{1} m$ for some $m_{1}$ satisfying $1 \leq m_{1}<m$. The product $n(m N)=\left(m_{1} m\right)(m N)=m_{1} N m^{2}$ is a sum of four squares, and by Observation 2 each of the squares is divisible by $m^{2}$. Hence $m_{1} N$ is a sum of four squares.

Observation 4: If $m N$ is a sum of four squares for some $m$ then $N$ is a sum of four squares. Proof: construct the sequence $m=m_{0}>m_{1}>m_{2}>\cdots$ where each $m_{i} N$ is a sum of four squares, setting $m_{i+1}=\frac{m_{i}}{2}$ when $m_{i}$ is even as in Observation 1 and constructing $m_{i+1}$ from $m_{i}$ when $m_{i}$ is odd as in Observation 3. At some point we must have $m_{i}=1$.
To prove that an odd prime $p$ is a sum of four squares it suffices to show that $m p$ is a sum of four squares for some $m$. A fancy proof: setting $f(x, y, z)=$ $x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}$ there is a non-trivial solution to $f(x, y, z) \equiv 0 \bmod p$ by Exercise (x), Chapter 4 , so there are integers $x, y, z$, not all congruent $0 \bmod p$, such that $x^{2}+y^{2}+z^{2}=m p$ for some $m$. A plain proof (which a computer can find): Let $p=2 r+1$ be given. The numbers $0^{2}, 1^{2}, \ldots, r^{2}$ are distinct mod $p$, as are the numbers $-1-0^{2},-1-1^{2}, \ldots,-1-r^{2}$ : If $0 \leq i<j \leq r$ then $r \geq j-i \geq 1$ and $1 \leq i+j \leq 2 r-1$, hence $i-j \not \equiv 0$ and $i+j \not \equiv 0 \bmod p$, hence $i^{2}-j^{2} \not \equiv 0 \bmod p$, hence $i^{2} \not \equiv j^{2}$. Since there are only $2 r+1$ residue classes, there has to be some overlap in the list: $x^{2} \equiv-1-y^{2} \bmod p$ where $0 \leq x, y \leq r$. This yields $x^{2}+y^{2}+0^{2}+1^{2}=m p$ for some $m$.

## Chapter 5 Exercises:

(i) Using Mathematica, the unique reduced forms with discriminant in the range $-1,-2, \ldots,-200$ are:
$d=-3: x^{2}+x y+y^{2}$
$d=-4: x^{2}+y^{2}$
$d=-7: x^{2}+x y+2 y^{2}$
$d=-8: x^{2}+2 y^{2}$
$d=-11: x^{2}+x y+3 y^{2}$
$d=-19: x^{2}+x y+5 y^{2}$
$d=-43: x^{2}+x y+11 y^{2}$
$d=-67: x^{2}+x y+17 y^{2}$
$d=-167: x^{2}+x y+41 y^{2}$.
(ii) By Problem (i) the form $x^{2}+x y+5 y^{2}$ is the unique reduced form with discriminant $d=-19$. It suffices to determine the odd primes properly represented by a form with discriminant -19 (the input must be coprime since the output will be prime). We must determine the odd primes $p$ such that $b^{2} \equiv-19 \bmod 4 p$ has a solution. Now $b^{2} \equiv-19 \bmod 4 p$ if and only if $b^{2} \equiv-19 \bmod 4$ and $b^{2} \equiv-19 \bmod p$. The first congruence always has a solution: any odd number $b$. The equation $b^{2} \equiv-19 \bmod p$ has a solution iff $\left(\frac{-19}{p}\right)=1$. Any even solution $b$ yields on odd solution $b+19$. Using the Jacobi symbol and quadratic reciprocity, we have $\left(\frac{-19}{p}\right)=\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)\left(\frac{19}{p}\right)=$ $(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}\left(\frac{p}{19}\right)(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(19-1)}{4}} \equiv p^{9} \bmod 19$. We have $p^{9} \equiv 1 \bmod 19$ when $p$ is equivalent to $1,4,5,6,7,9,11,16,17 \bmod 19$.
The least primes congruent to one of these are $191=f(6,5), 23=f(1,2), 43=$ $f(1,-3), 101=f(3,4), 197=f(9,4), 47=f(6,1), 163=f(11,2), 73=$ $f(4,3), 131=f(1,5)$.
(iii) Let $n=x^{2}+2 y^{2}$. Let $p \mid n$ be an odd prime. If $(y, p)=1$ then $0 \equiv x^{2}+2 y^{2} \bmod p$ implies $\left(x y^{-1}\right)^{2} \equiv-2 \bmod p$, hence $\left(\frac{-2}{p}\right)=1$, $1=\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)\left(\frac{2}{p}\right)=(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}}(-1)^{\frac{p^{2}-1}{8}}=(-1)^{\frac{(p-1)(p+5)}{8}}$, hence $p \equiv 1$ or $p \equiv 3$ $\bmod 8$. Contrapositive: $p \mid n$ is congruent to 5 or $7 \bmod 8$ then $p \mid y$, hence $p \mid x$, hence $p^{2} \mid n$. I will conjecture that the set of integers that can be expressed in the form $x^{2}+2 y^{2}$ are those in which its prime divisors congruent to 5 or $7 \bmod 8$ appear with an even exponent. Evidence of this: $1=1^{2}+2\left(0^{2}\right)$,
$2=0^{2}+2\left(1^{2}\right), 3=1^{2}+2\left(1^{2}\right), 4=2^{2}+2\left(0^{2}\right), 5$ cannot be expressed in the form $x^{2}+2 y^{2}, 6=2^{2}+2\left(1^{2}\right), 7$ cannot be expressed in the form $x^{2}+2 y^{2}$.

Let $P(n)$ be the statement that if $n=x^{2}+2 y^{2}$ then prime divisors of $n$ congruent to 5 or $7 \bmod 8$ appear with even exponent. Then $P(1)$ is true. Assume $P(1)$ through $P(n-1)$ are true. Now suppose $n=x^{2}+2 y^{2}$ is possible and let $p \mid n$ where $p \equiv 5$ or $p \equiv 7 \bmod 8$. We have seen that $p \mid x$ and $p \mid y$, hence $p^{2} \mid n$ and we can write $n=p^{2} n_{0}$ where $n_{0}=x_{0}^{2}+2 y_{0}^{2}$. Since $P\left(n_{0}\right)$ is true, so is $P(n)$. Hence $P(n)$ is true for all $n \geq 1$.
Conversely, let $n$ be such that prime divisors congruent to 5 or $7 \bmod 8$ appear with even exponent. Write $n=m s^{2}$ where $m$ is square-free. Then $m$ is a product of distinct primes not congruent to 5 or $7 \bmod 8$. It will suffice that all such primes $p$ are representable in the form $p=x_{p}^{2}+2 y_{p}^{2}$, because the set of integers of the form $x^{2}+2 y^{2}$ is closed with respect to multiplication:

$$
\left(a^{2}+2 b^{2}\right)\left(A^{2}+2 B^{2}\right)=(a A+2 b B)^{2}+2(a B-A b)^{2} .
$$

This can be derived as follows: Set

$$
M_{k}(x, y)=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
x & y \\
k y & x
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Then $\operatorname{det} M_{k}(x, y)=x^{2}-k y^{2}$. Given that we have

$$
M_{k}\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right) M_{k}\left(x_{2}, y_{2}\right)=M_{k}\left(x_{1} x_{2}+k y_{1} y_{2}, x_{1} y_{2}+y_{1} x_{2}\right)
$$

after taking determinants we obtain

$$
\left(x_{1}^{2}-k y_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}-k y_{2}^{2}\right)=\left(x_{1} x_{2}+k y_{1} y_{2}\right)^{2}-k\left(x_{1} y_{2}+y_{1} x_{2}\right)^{2} .
$$

The discriminant of $x^{2}+2 y^{2}$ is -8 , and there is just one form with this discriminant up to equivalence. The prime 2 can be expressed in this form. Given a prime $p$ congruent to 1 or $3 \bmod 8$, we have seen that $x^{2} \equiv-2$ $\bmod p$ has a solution. The same solution yields $(2 x)^{2} \equiv-8 \bmod 4 p$. So $p$ can be expressed in the form $x_{p}^{2}+2 y_{p}^{2}$. Note: we can use an infinite descent algorithm to express primes equal to 2 or congruent to $1,3 \bmod 8$ in the form $x^{2}+2 y^{2}$, adapting Problem 7 in the Problems to Think About for Chapter 5.
(iv) Integers congruent to $0,1,3 \bmod 4$ can be represented this way: $4 n=$ $(n+1)^{2}-(n-1)^{2}, 4 n+1=(2 n+1)^{2}-(2 n)^{2}, 4 n+3=(2 n+2)^{2}-(2 n+1)^{2}$.

Integers congruent to $2 \bmod 4$ cannot be presented this way: $(2 a)^{2}-(2 b)^{2}=$ $4\left(a^{2}-b^{2}\right) \equiv 0$ and $(2 a+1)^{2}-(2 b+1)^{2}=4\left(a^{2}+a-b^{2}-b\right) \equiv 0$.
(v) According to Mathematica, there are two reduced forms with discriminant $-20: x^{2}+5 y^{2}$ and $2 x^{2}+2 x y+3 y^{2}$. Now let $p$ be an odd prime not equal to 5. It is representable by one of these forms iff there is a solution to $x^{2} \equiv-20$ $\bmod 4 p$, i.e. an even solution to $x^{2} \equiv-20 \bmod p$, i.e. any solution at all (if an odd one exists, add $p$ to obtain an even one), iff $\left(\frac{-20}{p}\right)=1$, iff $(-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} p^{2} \equiv 1$ $\bmod 5$ using quadratic reciprocity. Setting $p=4 k+1$ yields $p \equiv 1,9 \bmod$ 20. Setting $p=4 k+3$ yields $p \equiv 3,7 \bmod 20$. We must show primes of the form $1+20 k$ and $9+20 k$ are representable in the form $x^{2}+5 y^{2}$ and primes of the form $3+20 k$ and $7+20 k$ are not. A brute-force calculation shows that the only values taken on by $2 x^{2}+2 x y+3 y^{2} \bmod 20$ are $0,2,3,7,8,10,12$, 15,18 . So primes congruent to 1 or $9 \bmod 20$ cannot be represented in this form and must be representable by $x^{2}+5 y^{2}$. Another brute-force calculation shows that the only values taken on by $x^{2}+5 y^{2} \bmod 20$ are $0,1,4,5,6,9$, $10,14,16$, so primes congruent to 3 or $7 \bmod 20$ cannot be represented in this form and must be representable by $2 x^{2}+2 x y+3 y^{2}$.
Examples: The first primes congruent to 1 or $9 \bmod 20$ are $41=6^{2}+5\left(1^{2}\right)$ and $29=3^{2}+5\left(2^{2}\right)$. The first primes after 101 that are congruent to 3 or 7 mod 20 are $103=2(-7)^{2}+2(-7)(5)+3\left(5^{2}\right)$ and $107=2(-8)^{2}+2(-8)(3)+3\left(3^{2}\right)$.
(vi) Mathematica: reduced forms with $d=-31$ are

$$
x^{2}+x y+8 y^{2}, 2 x^{2}-x y+4 y^{2}, 2 x^{2}+x y+4 y^{2} .
$$

Hence $h(-31)=3$.
(vii) It suffices to find the reduced form and calculate $a$. Applying $U_{k}$ with $k=-2$ we can convert $4 x^{2}+17 x y+20 y^{2}$ to $4 x^{2}+x y+2 y^{2}$. Applying $V$ we can further convert this to this $2 x^{2}-x y+4 y^{2}$. (Check: this is indeed one of the three reduced forms with discriminant -31.) The smallest output is 2 .
(viii) Assuming that the number of representations of $a$ by a form with discriminant $d$ is equal to the number of disinct solutions to $b^{2} \equiv d \bmod$ $4 a$ in $[0,2 a)$ times the number of automorphs of discriminant $d$ forms (not proved in the book), it suffices to show that the number of solutions to $x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod 4 n$ is the same as the number of solutions to $x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod$ $8 n$, since the discriminant of $x^{2}+y^{2}$ is -4 and there is one such form up to equivalence. Since each solution to $x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod 8 n$ is a solution to
$x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod 4 n$, it suffices to show that each solution to $x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod 4 n$ is also a solution to $x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod 8 n$. Suppose $x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod 4 n$. Then $n=x^{2}+y^{2}$ is possible. Using the closure-under-multiplication formula, $2 n=\left(1^{2}+1^{2}\right)\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)=(x-y)^{2}+(x+y)^{2}$, therefore $x^{2} \equiv-4 \bmod 8 n$ is possible.

This solution suggest a bijection: $\phi(x, y)=(x-y, x+y)$. This maps solutions to $n=x^{2}+y^{2}$ injectively into solutions to $2 n=x^{2}+y^{2}$. Moreover, if an even number $m$ satisfies $m^{2}=x^{2}+y^{2}$ then $x$ and $y$ have the same parity, therefore $p=\frac{x+y}{2}$ and $q=-\frac{x-y}{2}$ are integers, and $p^{2}+q^{2}=\frac{x^{2}}{4}+\frac{y^{2}}{4}=\frac{m^{2}}{4}=(\mathrm{m} / 2)^{2}$. Moreover $\phi(p, q)=(p-q, p+q)=(x, y)$, so the mapping is surjective.
(ix) Given $n=3^{k}-1=x_{1}^{k}+x_{2}^{k}+\cdots+x_{s}^{k}$, each $x_{i} \in\{1,2\}$. So there is some non-negative solution to $a+b=s$ where $a+b 2^{k}=n$. The larger $b$ is, the smaller $s$ is. We need to find the maximum value of $b$ such that $n-b 2^{k} \geq 0$. This yields $b=\left[n / 2^{k}\right], a=n-b 2^{k}=n-\left\lfloor\frac{n}{2^{k}}\right\rfloor 2^{k}, s=n-\left[n / 2^{k}\right] 2^{k}+\left[n / 2^{k}\right]$.

## Chapter 6: Diophantine Approximation

Introduction: Numbers can be classified as natural, integer, rational, real, complex. The rationals can be listed out uniquely in a sequence. The complex numbers cannot, because the reals in $[0,1]$ cannot by Cantor's argument. So there exist irrational numbers. In fact, we can prove $\theta$ is irrational. Algebraic numbers are complex numbers that are roots to polynomials with integer coefficients. For example, $\sqrt{2}$ is algebraic. Since we can list out integercoefficient polynomials sequentially, and each has a finite number of roots, we can list out their roots sequentially. So there exist transcendental (nonalgebraic) numbers. We will prove in this chapter that $e$ is transcendental and show how to construct other transcendental numbers.

## Section 6.1: Dirichlet's Theorem

Theorem: Let $\theta$ be a real number. Then $\theta$ is irrational if and only if there exist an infinite number of reduced fractions $\frac{p}{q}$ such that $\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right|<\frac{1}{q^{2}}$.
Proof: Consider a rational number $\theta=\frac{a}{b}$. When $\frac{p}{q} \neq \theta$ we have $\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right|=$ $\frac{|a q-b p|}{b q} \geq \frac{1}{b q}$, and $q \geq b \Longrightarrow \frac{1}{b q} \geq \frac{1}{q^{2}}$. So $\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right|<\frac{1}{q^{2}}$ can only be achieved for a finite number of values of $q$, namely $q<b$, which limits $p$ to a finite number of values.

Consider an irrational number $\theta$. To illustrate the construction we will find coprime integers $p$ and $q, 1 \leq q<10$, such that $|q \sqrt{2}-p| \leq \frac{1}{10}$. This yields
$\left|\sqrt{2}-\frac{p}{q}\right| \leq \frac{1}{10 q}<q^{2}$. Write $k \sqrt{2}=a_{k}+b_{k}$ for $0 \leq k \leq 9$, where $a_{k}$ is an integer and $0 \leq b_{k}<1$. Set $a_{10}=0$ and $b_{10}=1$. Now write $I_{k}=[k / 10,(k+1) / 10)$ for $0 \leq k \leq 8$ and $I_{9}=[9 / 10,1]$. Then the numbers $b_{0}, b_{1}, \ldots, b_{10}$ lie in the disjoint intervals $I_{0}, I_{1}, \ldots, I_{9}$, and two of these numbers lie in the same interval. Say that $b_{i}, b_{j} \in I_{k}$ where $0 \leq i<j<10$. Then we have $\left|b_{j}-b_{i}\right| \leq$ $\frac{1}{10}$. If $j<10$ then we can write $\left|(j-i) \sqrt{2}-\left(a_{j}-a_{i}\right)\right| \leq \frac{1}{10}$. If $j=10$ then we can write $\left|i \sqrt{2}-\left(1+a_{i}\right)\right| \leq \frac{1}{10}$. Mathematica yields

| k | $\mathrm{b}[\mathrm{k}]$ | $\mathrm{a}[\mathrm{k}]$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 0. | 0 |
| 1 | 0.414214 | 1 |
| 2 | 0.828427 | 2 |
| 3 | 0.242641 | 4 |
| 4 | 0.656854 | 5 |
| 5 | 0.0710678 | 7 |
| 6 | 0.485281 | 8 |
| 7 | 0.899495 | 9 |
| 8 | 0.313708 | 11 |
| 9 | 0.727922 | 12 |
| 10 | 1 | 0. |

We can choose $i=1, j=6$, which yields $|5 \sqrt{2}-7| \leq \frac{1}{10}$. Check: $5 \sqrt{2}-7 \approx$ 0.0710678 . So we can use $q=5, p=7$.

More generally, given $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$ and $1<Q \in \mathbb{Z}$ there exist a pair of integers $p, q$ with $1 \leq q<Q$ such that $|q \theta-p| \leq \frac{1}{Q}$. We can assume that $p$ and $q$ are coprime, dividing through if necessary by $(p, q)$. Hence $\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right| \leq \frac{1}{q Q}<\frac{1}{q^{2}}$. Having found $\frac{p}{q}$ satisfying this condition, choose any integer $Q^{\prime}>\frac{1}{\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right|}$. If $\left|q^{\prime} \theta-p^{\prime}\right| \leq \frac{1}{Q^{\prime}}$ then

$$
\left|\theta-\frac{p^{\prime}}{q^{\prime}}\right|<\frac{1}{q^{\prime}}\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right| \leq\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right|,
$$

hence $\frac{p^{\prime}}{q^{\prime}} \neq \frac{p}{q}$. So there are infinitely many such $\frac{p}{q}$.

## Section 6.2: Continued Fractions

Let $x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots$ be a sequence of real numbers with $x_{i}>0$ for $i \geq 1$. The associated sequence of continued fractions is $\left[x_{0}\right],\left[x_{0}, x_{1}\right],\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}\right], \ldots$
defined by the recurrence relation $\left[x_{0}\right]=x_{0}$ and

$$
\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]=x_{0}+1 /\left[x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]
$$

for $n \geq 1$. The first few terms in the sequence are

$$
x_{0}, x_{0}+\frac{1}{x_{1}}, x_{0}+\frac{1}{x_{1}+\frac{1}{x_{2}}}, x_{0}+\frac{1}{x_{1}+\frac{1}{x_{2}+\frac{1}{x_{3}}}}, \ldots
$$

Any rational number $\frac{a}{b}$ where $b>0$ can be expressed in the form $\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]$ for some choice of integers $x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}$ : by strong induction on $b$. For $b=1$ we have $\frac{a}{b}=\left[x_{0}\right]$ where $x_{0}=a$. Now assume for $1 \leq b \leq n$ that $\frac{a}{b}=\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right]$ for some choice of integers $x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}$. Given $b=n+1$, write $a=q b+r$ where $0 \leq r \leq n$. If $r=0$ then $\frac{a}{b}=[q]$, but if $1 \leq r<b$ then $\frac{b}{r}=\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right]$ and $\frac{a}{b}=q+\frac{r}{b}=b+1 /\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right]=\left[b, x_{0}, \ldots, x_{k}\right]$.
Example: Consider the sequence of Fibonacci numbers $F_{0}, F_{1}, F_{2}, F_{3}, F_{4}, \cdots=$ $1,1,2,3,5 \ldots$ For $n \geq 2$ we have

$$
\frac{F_{n}}{F_{n-1}}=\frac{F_{n-1}+F_{n-2}}{F_{n-1}}=1+\frac{F_{n-2}}{F_{n-1}}=\left[1, \frac{F_{n-1}}{F_{n-2}}\right]
$$

hence

$$
\frac{1}{1}=[1], \frac{2}{1}=[1,1], \frac{3}{2}=[1,1,1], \frac{5}{3}=[1,1,1,1], \ldots
$$

Given an irrational number $\theta$, we have $\theta_{0}=\theta=a_{0}+1 / \theta_{1}$ where $\theta_{1}>1$, $\theta_{1}=a_{1}+1 / \theta_{2}$ there $\theta_{2}>1, \theta_{2}=a_{2}+1 / \theta_{3}$ where $\theta_{3}>1$, etc via $a_{n}=\left[\theta_{n}\right]$ and $\theta_{n+1}=1 /\left\{\theta_{n}\right\}$ for all $n$. This gives rise to the continued fractions

$$
\begin{gathered}
\theta=a_{0}+\frac{1}{\theta_{1}} \\
\theta=a_{0}+\frac{1}{a_{1}+\frac{1}{\theta_{2}}} \\
\theta=a_{0}+\frac{1}{a_{1}+\frac{1}{a_{2}+\frac{1}{\theta_{3}}}}
\end{gathered}
$$

etc. Hence for all $n$ we have

$$
\theta=\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n-1}, \theta_{n}\right] .
$$

Example: we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sqrt{2}=1+(\sqrt{2}-1)=1+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}+1} \\
\sqrt{2}+1=2+(\sqrt{2}-1)=2+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}+1}
\end{gathered}
$$

hence

$$
\sqrt{2}=\left[1,2,2, \ldots, 2, \theta_{n}\right]
$$

for all $n \geq 1$.
Terminology: The numbers $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots$ are the partial quotients of $\theta$, the numbers $\theta_{1}, \theta_{2}, \ldots$ are the complete quotients of $\theta$, and the numbers $\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]$ are the convergents of $\theta$.

Theorem: $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty}\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]=\theta$ when $\theta$ is irrational.
Proof: For each $n \geq 0$ let $\left(p_{n}, q_{n}\right)$ be the coprime pair with $q_{n}>0$ that satisfies

$$
\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}=\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]
$$

For each $n \geq 1$ let $\left(p_{n}^{\prime}, q_{n}^{\prime}\right)$ be the coprime pair with $q_{n}^{\prime}>0$ that satisfies

$$
\frac{p_{n}^{\prime}}{q_{n}^{\prime}}=\left[a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n+1}\right]
$$

We can check directly that $p_{0}=a_{0}, q_{0}=1, p_{1}=a_{0} a_{1}+1, q_{1}=a_{1}$. Hence

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{1} & p_{0} \\
q_{1} & q_{0}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{0} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{1} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

Given

$$
\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}=a_{0}+\frac{q_{n-1}^{\prime}}{p_{n-1}^{\prime}}=\frac{a_{0} p_{n-1}^{\prime}+q_{n-1}^{\prime}}{p_{n-1}^{\prime}}
$$

for $n \geq 2$, we also have

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{n} & p_{n-1} \\
q_{n} & q_{n-1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{0} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{n-1}^{\prime} & p_{n-2}^{\prime} \\
q_{n-1}^{\prime} & q_{n-2}^{\prime}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Hence we can prove by induction that

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{n} & p_{n-1} \\
q_{n} & q_{n-1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{0} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{1} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right] \cdots\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{n} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Taking determinants, this yields

$$
\left|\begin{array}{cc}
p_{n} & p_{n-1} \\
q_{n} & q_{n-1}
\end{array}\right|=(-1)^{n+1}
$$

This implies

$$
\left|\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}-\frac{p_{n-1}}{q_{n-1}}\right|=\frac{1}{q_{n-1} q_{n}} .
$$

The matrix identity implies

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{n} & p_{n-1} \\
q_{n} & q_{n-1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{n-1} & p_{n-2} \\
q_{n-1} & q_{n-2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{n} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right],
$$

hence

$$
p_{n}=a_{n} p_{n-1}+p_{n-2}
$$

and

$$
q_{n}=a_{n} q_{n-1}+q_{n-2} .
$$

Since $q_{n} \rightarrow \infty$, this implies

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty}\left|\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}-\frac{p_{n-1}}{q_{n-1}}\right|=0
$$

If we can show that

$$
\frac{p_{2 n+1}}{q_{2 n+1}}>\theta>\frac{p_{2 n}}{q_{2 n}}
$$

for all $n$, then this limit implies that $\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}} \rightarrow \theta$.
Let $x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots$ with $x_{i}>0$ for all $i \geq 1$. Let $x_{k}^{+}$denote a quantity larger than $x_{k}$. We can prove by induction on $n$ that $\left[x_{0}, \ldots, x_{2 n}^{+}\right]>\left[x_{0}, \ldots, x_{2 n}\right]$ and $\left[x_{0}, \ldots, x_{2 n+1}^{+}\right]<\left[x_{0}, \ldots, x_{2 n+1}\right]$. Given that $\theta_{n}>a_{n}$ for all $n$, we have
$\frac{p_{2 n+1}}{q_{2 n+1}}=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{2 n+1}\right]>\left[a_{0}, \ldots, \theta_{2 n+1}\right]=\theta=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, \theta_{2 n}\right]>\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{2 n}\right]=\frac{p_{2 n}}{q_{2 n}}$.

Example: Applying this to $\sqrt{2}=[1,2,2, \ldots]$ we have $p_{n}=2 p_{n-1}+p_{n-2}$ and $q_{n}=2 q_{n-1}+q_{n-2}$ for $n \geq 2$ with $p_{0}=1, p_{1}=3, q_{0}=1, q_{1}=2$. This yields the sequence of fractions

$$
1, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{7}{5}, \frac{17}{12}, \frac{41}{29}, \frac{99}{70}, \frac{239}{169}, \frac{577}{408}, \frac{1393}{985}, \frac{3363}{2378}, \frac{8119}{5741} \cdots \longrightarrow \sqrt{2} .
$$

Example: Setting $a_{i}=1$ for all $i$ yields $p_{i}=F_{i+1}$ and $q_{i}=F_{i}$ for all $i \geq 0$. Given that

$$
\frac{p_{n+1}}{q_{n+1}}=1+\frac{q_{n}}{p_{n}}
$$

for all $n$, in the limit we obtain $\theta=1+1 / \theta$. This implies $\theta=\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$. Therefore

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{F_{n+1}}{F_{n}}=\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}
$$

## Section 6.3: Rational Approximations

We can extract a lot of information from the proof above about the convergents $\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right]$ to an irrational $\theta$ :

1. The sequence of differences $\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|$ is strictly decreasing. To see this, note that the recurrence relation

$$
P_{n+1}=x_{n+1} P_{n}+P_{n-1}
$$

and

$$
Q_{n+1}=x_{n+1} Q_{n}+Q_{n-1}
$$

holds for any arbitrary sequence $x_{0}, x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots$ satisfying $x_{i}>0$ for $i \geq 1$ and $P_{i} / Q_{i}=\left[x_{0}, x_{1}, \ldots x_{i}\right]$ for all $i$ with $P_{0}=x_{0}$ and $Q_{0}=1$. Setting $x_{i}=a_{i}$ for $0 \leq i \leq n$ and $x_{n+1}=\theta_{n+1}$ we obtain

$$
\theta=\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}, \theta_{n+1}\right]=\frac{P_{n+1}}{Q_{n+1}}=\frac{\theta_{n+1} p_{n}+p_{n-1}}{\theta_{n+1} q_{n}+q_{n-1}} .
$$

Substituting this into $q_{n} \theta-p_{n}$ and simplifying the numerator using

$$
\left|p_{n} q_{n-1}-p_{n-1} q_{n}\right|=1
$$

we obtain

$$
\left|q_{n} \theta-p_{n}\right|=\frac{1}{\theta_{n+1} q_{n}+q_{n-1}}
$$

Given that

$$
\theta_{n+1} q_{n}+q_{n-1}>q_{n}+q_{n-1}=\left(a_{n}+1\right) q_{n-1}+q_{n-2}>\theta_{n} q_{n-1}+q_{n-2}
$$

this implies

$$
\left|q_{n+1} \theta-p_{n+1}\right|<\left|q_{n} \theta-p_{n}\right|
$$

hence

$$
\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n+1}}{q_{n+1}}\right|<\frac{q_{n}}{q_{n+1}}\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right| .
$$

2. Given $a_{n+1}=\left[\theta_{n+1}\right]$ and $q_{n-1}<q_{n}$, we have

$$
a_{n+1} q_{n}<\theta_{n+1} q_{n}+q_{n-1}<\left(a_{n+1}+1\right) q_{n}+q_{n}=\left(a_{n+1}+2\right) q_{n} .
$$

This yields

$$
\frac{1}{\left(a_{n+1}+2\right) q_{n}^{2}}<\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|<\frac{1}{a_{n+1} q_{n}^{2}}
$$

which provides an alternative proof of Dirichlet's theorem.
3. Infinitely many convergents $\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}$ satisfy $\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|<\frac{1}{2 q_{n}^{2}}$. To see this, use the fact that $\frac{p_{2 n+1}}{q_{2 n+1}}>\theta>\frac{p_{2 n}}{q_{2 n}}$ and $\left|\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}-\frac{p_{n-1}}{q_{n-1}}\right|=\frac{1}{q_{n-1} q_{n}}$ to obtain

$$
\left|\theta-\frac{p_{2 n}}{q_{2 n}}\right|+\left|\theta-\frac{p_{2 n+1}}{q_{2 n+1}}\right|=\left|\frac{p_{2 n+1}}{q_{2 n+1}}-\frac{p_{2 n}}{q_{2 n}}\right|=\frac{1}{q_{2 n} q_{2 n+1}}<\frac{1}{2 q_{2 n}^{2}}+\frac{1}{2 q_{2 n+1}^{2}} .
$$

So either

$$
\left|\theta-\frac{p_{2 n}}{q_{2 n}}\right|<\frac{1}{2 q_{2 n}^{2}}
$$

or

$$
\left|\theta-\frac{p_{2 n+1}}{q_{2 n+1}}\right|<\frac{1}{2 q_{2 n+1}^{2}}
$$

4. Every rational number $p / q$ satisfying $|\theta-p / q|<1 / 2 q^{2}$ is a convergent to $\theta$ : We must have $q_{n} \leq q<q_{n+1}$ for some $n$. Given that the matrix $\left[\begin{array}{ll}p_{n+1} & p_{n} \\ q_{n+1} & q_{n}\end{array}\right]$ has determinant $(-1)^{n}$, we can find integers $u$ and $v$ such that

$$
\left[\begin{array}{c}
p \\
q
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
p_{n+1} & p_{n} \\
q_{n+1} & q_{n}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
u \\
v
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Since

$$
q_{n} \leq u q_{n+1}+v q_{n}<q_{n+1},
$$

$v \neq 0$ and $u$ and $v$ have opposite signs. Given that $q_{n+1} \theta-p_{n+1}$ and $q_{n} \theta-p_{n}$ are also of opposite signs, we obtain
$|q \theta-p|=\left|u\left(q_{n+1} \theta-p_{n+1}\right)+v\left(q_{n} \theta-p_{n}\right)\right|=|u|\left|q_{n+1} \theta-p_{n+1}\right|+|v|\left|q_{n} \theta-p_{n}\right| \geq\left|q_{n} \theta-p_{n}\right|$.
Therefore

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|\frac{p q_{n}-q p_{n}}{q q_{n}}\right|=\left|\frac{p}{q}-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right| \leq\left|\theta-\frac{p}{q}\right|+\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|= \\
\frac{1}{q}|q \theta-p|+\frac{1}{q_{n}}\left|q_{n} \theta-p_{n}\right| \leq\left(\frac{1}{q}+\frac{1}{q_{n}}\right)|q \theta-p|<\frac{q+q_{n}}{q q_{n}} \frac{1}{2 q} \leq \frac{1}{q q_{n}} \leq 1
\end{gathered}
$$

This forces $p q_{n}-q p_{n}=0, p / q=p_{n} / q_{n}$.
5. We can actually show that infinitely many convergents satisfy $\left|\theta-p_{n} / q_{n}\right|<$ $1 / \sqrt{5} q^{2}$. Suppose that there are three consecutive convergents

$$
p_{n} / q_{n}, p_{n+1} / q_{n+1}, p_{n+2} / q_{n+2}
$$

that satisfy $|\theta-p / q| \geq c / q^{2}$. We will show that $c<1 / \sqrt{5}$. Adding them in pairs as \#3 above we obtain

$$
\frac{c}{q_{n}^{2}}+\frac{c}{q_{n+1}^{2}} \leq\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|+\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n+1}}{q_{n+1}}\right| \leq \frac{1}{q_{n} q_{n+1}}
$$

and

$$
\frac{c}{q_{n+1}^{2}}+\frac{c}{q_{n+2}^{2}} \leq\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n+1}}{q_{n+1}}\right|+\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n+2}}{q_{n+2}}\right| \leq \frac{1}{q_{n+1} q_{n+2}}
$$

Rearranging, we obtain

$$
\lambda+\frac{1}{\lambda} \leq \frac{1}{c}
$$

and

$$
\mu+\frac{1}{\mu} \leq \frac{1}{c}
$$

where $\lambda=q_{n+1} / q_{n}$ and $\mu=q_{n+2} / q_{n+1}$. This implies

$$
\lambda \leq x, \quad \mu \leq x
$$

where

$$
x=\frac{1+\sqrt{1-4 c^{2}}}{2 c}
$$

Given that $q_{n+2}=a_{n+2} q_{n+1}+q_{n}$ we have $\mu=a_{n+2}+1 / \lambda \geq 1+1 / \lambda$. This yields

$$
\begin{gathered}
1+\frac{1}{x} \leq 1+\frac{1}{\lambda} \leq \mu \leq x, \\
x+1 \leq x^{2} .
\end{gathered}
$$

This forces

$$
x \geq \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}
$$

In fact, the inequality is strict because equality implies $\mu$ is irrational. Given that $x$ satisfies $c x^{2}-x+c=0$, we have

$$
c=\frac{x}{x^{2}+1}
$$

This is a decreasing function for $x \geq 1$, so

$$
c<\frac{\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}}{\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{2}+1}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} .
$$

In summary, when $c \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$, at least one of three consecutive convergents always satisfies $|\theta-p / q|<c / q^{2}$, hence infinitely many of them do. This is best possible: when $c<\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ and $\theta=\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$, only finitely many convergents $p_{k} / q_{k}$ satisfy $|\theta-p / q|<c / q^{2}$ and none of the non-convergents do. This is Hurwitz's Theorem, proved via Liouville's Theorem (Section 6.5).

## Section 6.4: Quadratic Irrationals

A quadratic irrational is an irrational solution to $a x^{2}+b x+c=0$ where $a, b, c$ are integers.
Theorem: Let $\theta$ be an irrational number, and let $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots$ be the corresponding sequence of partial quotients. Then $\theta$ is a quadratic irrational if and only if its partial quotients are ultimately periodic, i.e. there exists $m \geq 1$ and $N$ such that $n \geq N$ implies $a_{n}=a_{n+m}=a_{n+2 m}=\cdots$.
Proof: First suppose that the partial quotients are purely periodic, i.e. $a_{n}=a_{n+m}=a_{n+2 m}=\cdots$ for all $N \geq 0$. We can assume without loss of generality that $m \geq 2$. Given that $\theta_{m}=a_{0}+1 / \theta_{m+1}, \theta_{m+1}=a_{1}+1 / \theta_{1}, \ldots$, $\theta_{m}$ has the same convergents as $\theta$, hence is equal to $\theta$. This implies

$$
\theta=\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m-1}, \theta\right],
$$

which implies

$$
\theta=\frac{\theta p_{m-1}+p_{m-2}}{\theta q_{m-1}+q_{m-2}}
$$

hence $\theta$ is the root of a quadratic equation.
More generally, assume that $a_{n}=a_{n+m}=\cdots$ for $n \geq N$. We can assume $N \geq 2$. Then

$$
\theta=\left[a_{0}, \ldots, a_{N-1}, \psi\right]
$$

where $\psi$ is purely periodic. Then

$$
\theta=\frac{\psi p_{N-1}+p_{N-2}}{\psi q_{N-1}+q_{N-2}},
$$

and since $\psi$ has the form $r+\sqrt{s}$ where $r, s \in \mathbb{Q}$, so does $\theta$.
Conversely, let $\theta$ be an irrational solution to $a x^{2}+b x+c=0$. Define $f(x, y)=a x^{2}+b x y+c y^{2}$ and, for $n \geq 1$, the equivalent binary form $f_{n}(x, y)=$ $a_{n} x^{2}+b_{n} x y+c_{n} y^{2}$ where

$$
f_{n}(v)=f\left(V_{n} v\right)
$$

and

$$
V_{n}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{n} & p_{n-1} \\
q_{n} & q_{n-1}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Given

$$
\theta=\frac{\theta_{n+1} p_{n}+p_{n-1}}{\theta_{n+1} q_{n}+q_{n-1}}
$$

and

$$
f_{n}(x, y)=f\left(p_{n} x+p_{n-1} y, q_{n} x+q_{n-1} y\right),
$$

we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
f_{n}\left(\theta_{n+1}, 1\right)=f\left(\theta\left(q_{n} \theta_{n+1}+q_{n-1}\right), \theta_{n+1} q_{n}+q_{n-1}\right)= \\
\left(\theta_{n+1} q_{n}+q_{n-1}\right)^{2} f(\theta, 1)=0 .
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence $\theta_{n+1}$ is a root of $a_{n} x^{2}+b_{n} x+c_{n}=0$. If we can show that there finitely many triples $\left(a_{n}, b_{n}, c_{n}\right)$ then there must be a finite number of possibilities for $\theta_{n}$. So at some point we have $\theta_{N+m}=\theta_{N}$, which implies ultimate periodicity in the sequence $a_{0}, a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots$ by virtue of its definition.

We have $a_{n}=f_{n}(1,0)=f\left(p_{n}, q_{n}\right), c_{n}=f_{n}(0,1)=f\left(p_{n-1}, q_{n-1}\right)=a_{n-1}$, and $f(\theta, 1)=0$. We also have

$$
a_{n}=f\left(p_{n}, q_{n}\right)=q_{n}^{2} f\left(p_{n} / q_{n}, 1\right)=q_{n}^{2}\left(f\left(p_{n} / q_{n}, 1\right)-f(\theta, 1)\right)=
$$

$$
q_{n}^{2}\left(a\left(\left(p_{n} / q_{n}\right)^{2}-\theta^{2}\right)+b\left(\left(p_{n} / q_{n}\right)-\theta\right)\right) .
$$

The inequality

$$
\left|\theta-p_{n} / q_{n}\right|<1 / q_{n}^{2}
$$

implies

$$
q_{n}^{2}\left|\theta^{2}-p_{n}^{2} / q_{n}^{2}\right|=\left|q_{n} \theta-p_{n}\right|\left|q_{n} \theta+p_{n}\right|<\left|\theta+p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \leq 3|\theta|
$$

for sufficiently large $n$. Hence $\left|a_{n}\right| \leq M$ for some $M$. In other words, there are finitely many values for $a_{n}$. Since $c_{n}$ and $b_{n}$ are determined by $a_{n}$ and the common discriminant $d$, there are a finite number of triples $\left(a_{n}, b_{n}, c_{n}\right)$.
We now characterize the purely periodic quadratic irrationals in terms of continued fractions. If $\theta$ is purely periodic then it satisfies

$$
\theta=\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m-1}, \theta\right]
$$

for some $m$, therefore

$$
\theta=\frac{\theta p_{m-1}+p_{m-2}}{\theta q_{m-1}+q_{m-2}}
$$

therefore $\theta$ is a root of $f(x)=q_{m-1} x^{2}+\left(q_{m-2}-p_{m-1}\right) x-p_{m-2}$. We have $\theta=a_{0}+1 / \theta_{1}>1$. The other root $\theta^{\prime}$ lies between -1 and 0 by the intermediate value theorem since $f(-1)=q_{m-1}-q_{m-2}+p_{m-1}-p_{m-2}>0$ and $f(0)=$ $-p_{m-2}<0$.
Conversely, let $\theta$ be a quadratic irrational that satisfies $\theta>1$ and $-1<$ $\theta^{\prime}<0$, where $\theta^{\prime}$ denotes the other root of the quadratic that $\theta$ satisfies. Setting $\theta_{0}=\theta$ we have $-1<\left(\theta_{0}\right)^{\prime}<0$. Now assume $-1<\left(\theta_{n}\right)^{\prime}<0$. Then $\theta_{n}=a_{n}+1 / \theta_{n+1}$, hence $\left(\theta_{n}\right)^{\prime}=a_{n}+1 /\left(\theta_{n+1}\right)^{\prime}$, hence $-1<a_{n}+1 /\left(\theta_{n+1}\right)^{\prime}<0$, hence

$$
-\frac{1}{a_{n}}<\left(\theta_{n+1}\right)^{\prime}<-\frac{1}{1+a_{n}} .
$$

Therefore $-1<\left(\theta_{n}\right)^{\prime}<0$ for all $n$. We also have

$$
a_{n}-\left(\theta_{n}\right)^{\prime}=-\frac{1}{\left(\theta_{n+1}\right)^{\prime}},
$$

hence, after computing the floor of each expression,

$$
a_{n}=\left[-\frac{1}{\theta_{n+1}^{\prime}}\right]
$$

for each $n$. Since $\theta$ is ultimately periodic with some period $m \geq 1$, there is a minimum value of $n$ such that $a_{k}=a_{k+m}$ for all $k \geq n$. If $n \geq 1$ we have $\theta_{n}=\theta_{n+m}$, therefore $\left(\theta_{n}\right)^{\prime}=\left(\theta_{n+p}\right)^{\prime}$, therefore $a_{n-1}=a_{n+p-1}$. Contradiction. Therefore $n=0$ and $\theta$ is purely periodic.
Now consider $\theta=\sqrt{d}+[\sqrt{d}]$ where $d$ is not a perfect square. Then $\theta^{\prime}=$ $-\sqrt{d}+[\sqrt{d}]$, therefore $-1<\theta<0$, therefore $\theta$ is purely periodic. If

$$
\sqrt{d}+[\sqrt{d}]=\left[\overline{a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{p-1}}\right]
$$

then

$$
\sqrt{d}=\left[a_{0}-[\sqrt{d}], \overline{a_{1}, \ldots, a_{p}}\right] .
$$

For example, if $\theta=\sqrt{2}+1$ then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\theta=2+\frac{1}{\theta_{1}} \\
\theta_{1}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}-1}=\sqrt{2}+1=\theta
\end{gathered}
$$

hence

$$
\sqrt{2}+1=[2,2,2, \ldots]
$$

and

$$
\sqrt{2}=[1,2,2 \ldots] .
$$

## Section 6.5: Liouville's Theorem

We know that when $\theta$ is irrational and $|\theta-p / q|<1 / 2 q^{2}$ for some rational number $p / q, p / q=p_{n} / q_{n}$ for some $n$. Hence if $p / q$ is not a convergent then $|\theta-p / q| \geq 1 / 2 q^{2}$. Moreover, we proved earlier that

$$
\left|\theta-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|>\frac{1}{\left(a_{n}+2\right) q_{n}^{2}}
$$

for all $n$. When $\theta$ is a quadratic irrational the sequence of partial quotients $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots$ is bounded, so a number $c>0$ can be found so that $\left|\theta-p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \geq$ $c / q_{n}^{2}$ for all convergents $p_{n} / q_{n}$. In summary, a quadratic irrational $\theta$ satisfies $|\theta-p / q|>c / q^{2}$ for all rational $p / q$ and some $c>0$. Quadratic irrational numbers fall into a class of numbers called algebraic numbers, and Liouville's theorem states that for any algebraic number $\alpha$ with minimal polynomial of
degree $n>1$ there exists a number sufficiently small real number $c>0$ such that $|\alpha-p / q|>c / q^{n}$ for all rationals $p / q$. We will define algebraic number carefully, then prove Liouville's theorem.
A real or complex number $\alpha$ is said to be algebraic if it is a zero of a non-zero polynomial $P(x)$ with integer coefficients. We can always assume that the coefficients of $P(x)$ do not have a common divisor. If $P(x)$ and $Q(x)$ are reduced polynomials of least degree $n$ such that $P(\alpha)=Q(\alpha)=0$ then for any integers $a$ and $b$ we see that $\alpha$ is a root of $a P(x)-b Q(x)$. We can choose a coprime pair $a$ and $b$ so that $a P(x)-b Q(x)$ has smaller degree than $n$, which forces $a P(x)=b Q(x)$. If $p$ is a prime dividing $b$ then, since $p$ cannot divide all the coefficients of $P(x), p$ divides $a$. Since $(a, b)=1$, this forces $|b|=1$, and similarly $|a|=1$. If we further assume that $P(x)$ and $Q(x)$ have positive leading coefficient then we must have $P(x)=Q(x)$. In other words, there is a unique reduced polynomial $P(x)$ of minimal degree and positive leading coefficient such that $P(\alpha)=0$, and we call $P(x)$ the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$. For example, the quadratic irrational rational $\sqrt{2}$ has minimal polynomial $P(x)=x^{2}-2$ and we can see that $\sqrt{2}$ is an algebraic number. Note also that rational numbers $p / q$ are algebraic with minimal polynomial $q x-p$, but the degree of the minimal polynomial in this case is 1 .

Minimal polynomials are irreducible over the rationals: If $P(x)$ is the minimal polynomial of $\alpha$ then $P(x)=f(x) g(x)$ implies $f(\alpha)$ or $g(\alpha)=0$. We can multiply $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ by a suitable integers to obtain reduced polynomials $F(x)$ and $G(x)$ with positive leading term satisfying $F(\alpha)=0$ or $G(\alpha)=0$, and minimality of $P(x)$ implies that $P(x)=F(x)$ or $P(x)=G(x)$. Hence $f(x)$ or $g(x)$ is a scalar multiple of $P(x)$, which implies $P(x)$ is irreducible.

For the purposes of presenting this material rapidly in a lecture, we can say that $\alpha$ is algebraic if and only if it is the root of a non-zero polynomial with rational coefficients. The minimal polynomial $P(x)$ is the unique polynomial of minimal degree and leading coefficient 1 and must be irreducible in $\mathbb{Q}[x]$.
To prove Liouville's theorem, let $\alpha$ be a real algebraic number with minimal polynomial $P(x)$ of degree $n>1$. Let $r=p / q$ be given where $q>0$. Then by the mean-value theorem,

$$
P(\alpha)-P(r)=(\alpha-r) P^{\prime}\left(\xi_{r}\right)
$$

for some $\xi_{r} \in(\alpha, r)$. We have $P(\alpha)=0$ and, since $P(x)$ is irreducible of degree $\geq 2$ over the rationals, $P(r) \neq 0$. This implies $P^{\prime}\left(\xi_{r}\right) \neq 0$. We have

$$
|\alpha-r|=\left|\frac{P(r)}{P^{\prime}\left(\xi_{r}\right)}\right|
$$

Choosing a positive integer $M$ so that $M P(x)$ has integer coefficients, $q^{n} M P(p / q)$ is a non-zero integer, hence $|P(r)| \geq 1 / M q^{n}$. Hence

$$
|\alpha-p / q| \geq \frac{1}{M q^{n}\left|P^{\prime}\left(\xi_{r}\right)\right|}
$$

For $|\alpha-p / q| \leq 1$ have $\left|\xi_{r}\right| \leq\left|\xi_{r}-\alpha\right|+|\alpha| \leq|r-\alpha|+|\alpha| \leq 1+|\alpha|$, hence we can find $C \geq 1$ such that $\left|P^{\prime}\left(\xi_{r}\right)\right| \leq C$, which implies

$$
|\alpha-p / q| \geq \frac{1}{M C q^{n}}
$$

The latter inequality is also satisfied when $|\alpha-p / q| \geq 1$.
For example, consider $\alpha=\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$. Its minimal polynomial is $P(x)=x^{2}-x-1$. We have

$$
|\alpha-p / q| \geq \frac{1}{q^{2}\left|2 \xi_{r}-1\right|}
$$

for some $\xi$ between $\alpha$ and $p / q$. As $p / q \rightarrow \alpha, \xi_{r} \rightarrow \alpha$, hence $\left|2 \xi_{r}-1\right| \rightarrow \sqrt{5}$. When $|\alpha-p / q|<c^{\prime} / q^{2}$ for some $c^{\prime}<1 / \sqrt{5}$ we know that $p / q=p_{k} / q_{k}$ for some $k$, which implies

$$
c^{\prime} / q_{k}^{2}>\left|\alpha-p_{k} / q_{k}\right| \geq \frac{1}{q_{k}^{2}\left|2 \xi_{k}-1\right|}
$$

which implies

$$
c^{\prime}>\frac{1}{\left|2 \xi_{k}-1\right|},
$$

which implies

$$
\left|2 \xi_{k}-1\right|>1 / c^{\prime}>\sqrt{5}
$$

which can only happen for a finite number of $k$. So for all rational numbers except a finite number of convergents of the form $p_{k} / q_{k},|\alpha-p / q| \geq c^{\prime} / q^{2}$ when $c^{\prime}<1 / \sqrt{5}$. This proves Hurwitz's theorem.

Liouville's theorem says that algebraic numbers $\alpha$ of degree $d \geq 2$ are separated from rational numbers in the sense that $q^{d}|\alpha-p / q| \geq c>0$ for every rational $p / q$. So if $\alpha$ is a real number for which there exists a sequence $p_{1} / q_{1}, p_{2} / q_{2}, \ldots$ such that $q_{n}^{n}\left|\alpha-p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ then for any $d \geq 2$ we have (eventually)

$$
q_{n}^{d}\left|\alpha-p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \leq q_{n}^{n}\left|\alpha-p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \rightarrow 0
$$

hence $\alpha$ is not algebraic of any degree $d$ (i.e. transcendental). We can replace the expression $q_{n}^{n}$ by $f(n)$ where $q_{n}^{d} \leq f(n)$ for any $d \geq 2$ and sufficiently large $n$, for example $f(n)=q_{n}^{g(n)}$ where $g(n) \rightarrow \infty$.
Example: Let $r \in(0,1)$ be a rational number. Set $\theta=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} r^{\psi(k)}$. We will choose $r$ and $\psi(k) \in \mathbb{Z}$ so that $\theta$ is a transcendental convergent infinite series. The partial sums $s_{n}=\sum_{k=0}^{n} r^{\psi(k)}$ are rational and we set $p_{n} / q_{n}=s_{n}$. We have

$$
\theta-p_{n} / q_{n}=\sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} r^{\psi(k)}=r^{\psi(n+1)} \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} r^{\psi(k)-\psi(n+1)}
$$

Assuming $\psi(n+i)-\psi(n+1) \geq i$ for all $i \geq 1$ we have

$$
\left(\frac{1}{r}\right)^{\psi(n+1)}\left|\theta-p_{n} / q_{n}\right|=\sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} r^{\psi(k)-\psi(n+1)} \rightarrow 0
$$

For example, if $r=1 / 2$ and $\psi(n+1)=(n+1)$ ! then we can set $q_{n}=2^{n!}$ and $p_{n}=q_{n} s_{n}$ (verify that $p_{n}$ is an integer), and we have $q_{n}^{n}<2^{\psi(n+1)}$, therefore

$$
q_{n}^{n}\left|\theta-p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \rightarrow 0
$$

This yields the transcendental number

$$
\theta=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{k!}}
$$

A proof that $e$ is transcendental: The proof begins with the observation that for any differentiable function $f$, if we set $I(t, f)=e^{t} \int_{0}^{t} e^{-x} f(x) d x$, then integration by parts yields

$$
I(t, f)=e^{t} f(0)-f(t)+I\left(t, f^{\prime}\right)
$$

When $f(x)$ is a polynomial, this yields

$$
I(t, f)=e^{t} \sum_{j \geq 0} f^{(j)}(0)-\sum_{j \geq 0} f^{(j)}(t)
$$

where the index $j$ is bounded above by the degree of $f(x)$. Now suppose $e$ is algebraic. Then there exist integers $a_{0}, a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n}$, coefficients of the minimal polynomial of $e$, that satisfy

$$
a_{0}+a_{1} e+\cdots+a_{n} e_{n}=0
$$

This yields

$$
a_{0} I(0, f)+a_{1} I(1, f)+\cdots+a_{n} I(n, f)=-\sum_{k=0}^{n} \sum_{j \geq 0} a_{k} f^{(j)}(k)
$$

The right-hand side can be evaluated given information about the coefficients of $f(x)$, and the left-hand side can be approximated using properties of the definite integral. The idea is to choose $f(x)$ to yield a contradiction.

Details: consider the polynomial

$$
f(x)=x^{p-1}(x-1)^{p} \cdots(x-n)^{p}
$$

where $p>n$ is prime. We claim that all the expressions $f^{(j)}(k)$ are divisible by $p$ ! for $j \geq 0$ and $0 \leq k \leq n$ except $f^{(p-1)}(0)$, and the latter is divisible by $(p-1)$ ! and not $p$. To see this, note that for $1 \leq k \leq n$ the polynomial $f(x+k)$ is divisible by $x^{p}$. Since the coefficient of $x^{j}$ in $f(x+k)$ is $\frac{f^{(j)}(k)}{j!}$, $f^{(j)}(k)=0$ for $j<p$ and $f^{(j)}(k)$ is a multiple of $j$ ! for $j \geq p$. Since the coefficient of $x^{j}$ in $f(x)$ is $\frac{f^{(j)}(0)}{j!}, f^{(j)}(0)=0$ for $j<p-1$ and $f^{(j)}(0)$ is a multiple of $j$ ! for $j>p-1$. The coefficient of $x^{p-1}$ in $f(x)$ is $(-1)^{n p}(n!)^{p}$, hence $f^{(p-1)}(0)=(p-1)!(-1)^{n p}(n!)^{p}$ is a multiple of $(p-1)$ ! that is not divisible by $p$.
Let $\bar{f}(x)$ denote the polynomial

$$
\bar{f}(x)=x^{p-1}(x+1)^{p} \cdots(x+n)^{p} .
$$

Then $\bar{f}(k) \leq(2 n)^{2 n p}$ for each $0 \leq k \leq n$.

We return to the identity

$$
a_{0} I(0, f)+a_{1} I(1, f)+\cdots+a_{n} I(n, f)=-\sum_{k=0}^{n} \sum_{j \geq 0} a_{k} f^{(j)}(k) .
$$

Since $a_{0} \neq 0$, and given the information we have about $f(x)$ above, the right-hand side in this identity is a non-zero multiple of $(p-1)$ !. This yields

$$
\left|a_{0}\right||I(0, f)|+\left|a_{1}\right||I(1, f)|+\cdots+\left|a_{n}\right||I(n, f)| \geq(p-1)!.
$$

On the other hand,

$$
|I(t, f)|=\left|e^{t} \int_{0}^{t} e^{-x} f(x) d x\right| \leq e^{t} \int_{0}^{t} e^{-x} \bar{f}(x) d x
$$

Since

$$
\int_{0}^{t} e^{-x} x^{j} d x \leq \int_{0}^{t} x^{j} \leq t^{j+1}
$$

we have

$$
|I(t, f)| \leq t e^{t} \bar{f}(t)
$$

Combined with the inequalities above this implies

$$
\left(\left|a_{1}\right| e+2\left|a_{2}\right| e^{2}+\cdots+n\left|a_{n}\right| e^{n}\right)(2 n)^{2 n p} \geq(p-1)!.
$$

So there exist integers $a, k>0$ such that

$$
a k^{p} \geq(p-1)!
$$

for all primes $p>n$. This is impossible: for $p \geq k+2$,

$$
\begin{gathered}
(p-1)!=k!(k+1) \cdots(p-1) \geq k!(k+1)^{p-k-1}, \\
a \geq \frac{(p-1)!}{k^{p}} \geq \frac{k!}{(k+1)^{k+1}}\left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right)^{p},
\end{gathered}
$$

and $\left(\frac{k+1}{k}\right)^{p} \rightarrow \infty$ as $p \rightarrow \infty$.

## Section 6.7: Minkowski's Theorem

Given a bounded region $X \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n}$ we define

$$
\operatorname{vol}(X)=\int_{X} 1 d x_{1} d x_{2} \cdots d x_{n}
$$

Given an $n \times n$ matrix $A$, we have

$$
\operatorname{vol}(A X)=|\operatorname{det}(A)| \operatorname{vol}(X)
$$

by the change-of-variables theorem.
Let $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}$ be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^{n}$. These vectors define an integer lattice $\Lambda$ via

$$
\Lambda=\operatorname{span}_{\mathbb{Z}}\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}\right)
$$

In other words, $\Lambda$ consists of all vectors of the form $A u$ where $A$ is the matrix whose columns are $a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}$ and $u$ is a column vector with integer coordinates. The parameter $d(\Lambda)$ denotes the determinant of $A$.

A symmetric convex body $S \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is an open, bounded set that satisfies three properties: $0 \in S, x \in S$ implies $-x \in S$, and $x, y \in S$ and $0<t<1$ implies $t x+(1-t) y \in S$.
Minkowski's theorem states that if $\operatorname{vol}(S)>2^{n} d(\Lambda)$ then $S$ contains a nonzero point in $\Lambda$. For the proof, set $S_{0}=A^{-1} S$. Then $S_{0}$ is a convex body with $\operatorname{vol}\left(S_{0}\right)>2^{n}$, and it suffices to find a non-zero point integral point in $S_{0}$. Let $S_{1}=\frac{1}{2} S_{0}$. Then $S_{1}$ is a symmetric convex body with $\operatorname{vol}\left(S_{1}\right)>1$. A partition of $S_{1}$ is $\bigcup_{u} S_{1}(u)$, where

$$
S_{1}(u)=\left\{x \in S_{1}: u_{i} \leq x_{i}<u_{i+1} \text { for } 1 \leq i \leq n\right\} .
$$

Note that $S_{1}(u)-u$ has the same volume as $S_{1}(u)$ for each $u$ and $S_{1}(u)-u \subseteq$ $[0,1]^{n}$. Since

$$
\sum_{u} \operatorname{vol}\left(S_{1}(u)-u\right)>1
$$

and

$$
\operatorname{vol}\left([0,1]^{n}\right)=1,
$$

there must be distinct integral points $u, v$ such that

$$
\left(S_{1}(u)-u\right) \cap\left(S_{1}(v)-v\right) \neq \emptyset .
$$

Let $z$ be an element in the intersection. Then $z=x-u$ for some $x \in S_{1}(u)$ and $z=y-v$ for some $y \in S_{1}(v)$. So we have $z=\frac{1}{2} X-u$ and $z=\frac{1}{2} Y-v$ for some $X, Y \in S_{0}$. Writing $Y=-Y^{\prime}$ we have $Y^{\prime} \in S_{0}$. So now we have

$$
\frac{1}{2} X-u=z=-\frac{1}{2} Y^{\prime}-v
$$

$$
\frac{1}{2} X+\frac{1}{2} Y^{\prime}=u-v
$$

By convexity, $\frac{1}{2} X+\frac{1}{2} Y^{\prime} \in S_{0}$, and this is a non-trivial integral point in $\mathbb{R}^{n}$.
In summary, if a convex body $S$ is symmetric about the origin and has volume greater than $2^{n}$ times the determinant defining a lattice, then it contains a non-trivial point in the lattice. In particular, if $\lambda_{1} \cdots \lambda_{n}>\operatorname{det}(A)$ then for $m=1,2,3, \ldots$ there is a non-zero $u_{m} \in \mathbb{Z}^{n}$ such that

$$
A u \in\left(-\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{1}\right) \times \cdots \times\left(-\lambda_{n}-1 / m, \lambda_{n}+1 / m\right)
$$

Inspecting the sequence $u_{1}, u_{2}, u_{3}, \ldots$ we see that there are only a finite number of distinct terms, so one of them, call it $u$, satisfies

$$
A u \in\left(-\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{1}\right) \times \cdots \times\left[-\lambda_{n}, \lambda_{n}\right] .
$$

Example 1: Let $\theta_{1}, \ldots, \theta_{n}$ be real numbers and define

$$
A=\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 0 \\
\theta_{1} & \theta_{2} & \cdots & \theta_{n} & -1
\end{array}\right]
$$

$\lambda_{1}=Q, \ldots, \lambda_{n}=Q, \lambda_{n+1}=Q^{-n}$. Then there exist integers $q_{1}, q_{2}, \ldots, q_{n}, p$, not all zero (the coordinates of $u$ ), such that $\left|q_{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|q_{n}\right|<Q$ and

$$
\left|q_{1} \theta_{1}+\cdots+q_{n} \theta_{n}-p\right| \leq Q^{-n}
$$

Example 2: Let $\theta_{1}, \ldots, \theta_{n}$ be real numbers and define

$$
A=\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
-1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & \theta_{1} \\
0 & -1 & \cdots & 0 & \theta_{2} \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & -1 & \theta_{n} \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

$\lambda_{1}=1 / Q, \ldots, \lambda_{n}=1 / Q, \lambda_{n+1}=Q^{n}$. Then there exist integers $p_{1}, p_{2}, \ldots, p_{n}, q$, not all zero (the coordinates of $u$ ), such that

$$
\left|q \theta_{1}-p_{1}\right|,\left|q \theta_{2}-p_{2}\right|, \ldots,\left|q \theta_{n}-p_{n}\right|<1 / Q
$$

and $|q| \leq Q^{n}$. For further results, see Cassels' An Introduction to the Geometry of Numbers.

## Chapter 6 Exercises

1. Write $\theta=[1,2,3, \overline{1,4}]$. Then $\theta$ is a quadratic irrational. We first determine $\phi=[1,4]$. We have

$$
\phi=[1,4, \phi] .
$$

Writing the convergents to $\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, a_{2}\right]$ we have

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
p_{2} & p_{1} \\
q_{2} & q_{1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{0} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{1} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{2} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{ll}
4 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\phi & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
1+5 \phi & 5 \\
1+4 \phi & 4
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{gathered}
\phi=\frac{p_{2}}{q_{2}}=\frac{1+5 \phi}{1+4 \phi} \\
\phi \in\left\{\frac{1}{2}(1-\sqrt{2}), \frac{1}{2}(1+\sqrt{2})\right\} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Since $a_{0}=1$ we must have

$$
\phi=\frac{1}{2}(1+\sqrt{2}) .
$$

Now we can write $\theta=[1,2,3, \phi]$. Writing the convergents to $\left[a_{0}, a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}\right]$ we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
{\left[\begin{array}{ll}
p_{3} & p_{2} \\
q_{3} & q_{2}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{0} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{1} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{2} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
a_{3} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{ll}
1 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{ll}
2 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{ll}
3 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{ll}
\phi & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]=} \\
\\
{\left[\begin{array}{cc}
3+10 \phi & 10 \\
2+7 \phi & 7
\end{array}\right] .}
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence

$$
\theta=\frac{p_{3}}{q_{3}}=\frac{3+10 \phi}{2+7 \phi}=-\frac{2}{23}(-18+\sqrt{2}) .
$$

Mathematica yields

$$
\text { ContinuedFraction }\left[-\frac{2}{23}(-18+\sqrt{2}), 10\right]=\{1,2,3,1,4,1,4,1,4,1\} .
$$

(ii) Using the program myContinuedFraction which I wrote in Mathematica, the continued fraction representing 3.1415926 is $[3,7,15,1,243, \cdots]$. Applying myConvergents to this yields the list $\{3,22 / 7,333 / 106,355 / 113,86598 / 27565, \ldots\}$. So $|3.1415926-355 / 113|<\frac{1}{243(113)^{2}}$. This implies
$|\pi-355 / 113| \leq|\pi-3.1415926|+|3.1415926-355 / 113|<10^{-7}+\frac{1}{243(113)^{2}}<10^{-6}$.
(iii) We have $\theta=\frac{a+\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}{2}=[a, a, \ldots], \theta^{\prime}=\frac{a-\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}{2}$. This yields the recurrence relation

$$
q_{0}=1, q_{1}=a, q_{n}=a q_{n-1}+q_{n-2}(n \geq 2)
$$

the solution to which is

$$
q_{n}=\alpha(\theta)^{n+1}+\beta\left(\theta^{\prime}\right)^{n+1}
$$

for a suitable $\alpha$ and $\beta$. Using the initial conditions we obtain

$$
\alpha=\frac{1}{\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}=\frac{1}{\theta-\theta^{\prime}}, \beta=\frac{-1}{\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}=\frac{-1}{\theta-\theta^{\prime}} .
$$

We obtain the Fibonacci sequence when $a=1$.
(iv) The recurrence relation in (iii) suggests that a floor for $q_{n}$ is given by the Fibonacci numbers $F_{0}, F_{1}, F_{2}, \ldots$ So we must argue $F_{n} \geq\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-1}$. This is true for $n=0$ and $n=1$. Assuming it true for $F_{0}$ through $F_{n}$, we have

$$
F_{n+1} \geq\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-1}+\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n-2}=\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^{n}
$$

since the number $x=\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ satisfies $x^{-1}+x^{-2}=1$. On the other hand, if $a_{n} \leq a$ for all $n$ then the recurrence relation in (iii) says that $q_{n} \leq Q_{n}$ where
$Q_{n}$ is the solution to the recurrence relation in (iii). The latter sequence satisfies $Q_{n} \leq\left(\frac{a+\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}{2}\right)^{n}$ for $n=0$ and $n=1$. Assuming this is true for $Q_{0}$ through $Q_{n}$, we have
$Q_{n+1}=a Q_{n}+Q_{n-1} \leq a\left(\frac{a+\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}{2}\right)^{n}+\left(\frac{a+\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}{2}\right)^{n-1}=\left(\frac{a+\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}{2}\right)^{n+1}$
since $x=\frac{a+\sqrt{a^{2}+4}}{2}$ satisfies $a x+1=x^{2}$.
(v) We will first look at convergents. We have $\left|e-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|>\frac{1}{\left(a_{n}+2\right) q_{n}^{2}}$. We want to show $\frac{1}{a_{n}+2}>\frac{c}{\log q_{n}}$ for an appropriate $c>0$. In other words, $q_{n}>e^{c\left(a_{n}+2\right)}$. This is clear because $q_{n}$ grows exponentially by (iv) and $a_{n}$ is bounded by a linear function. Now if some $|e-p / q|<c / q^{2} \log q$ then it must be a convergent (choosing $c$ sufficiently small), and this is not possible.
(vi) Thue-Siegel-Roth says that algebraic numbers $\alpha$ of degree $d \geq 2$ are separated from rational numbers in the sense that $q^{\kappa}|\alpha-p / q| \geq c(\alpha, \kappa)>0$ for every rational $p / q$ for any given $\kappa>2$. So if $\alpha$ is a real number for which there exists a sequence $p_{1} / q_{1}, p_{2} / q_{2}, \ldots$ such that $f(n)\left|\alpha-p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ where $\frac{q_{n}^{\kappa}}{f(n)}=O(1)$ for some $\kappa>2$ then we have

$$
q_{n}^{\kappa}\left|\alpha-p_{n} / q_{n}\right|=\frac{q_{n}^{\kappa}}{f(n)} f(n)\left|\alpha-p_{n} / q_{n}\right| \rightarrow 0
$$

hence $\alpha$ is transcendental.
Now set $\alpha=\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{a^{b^{k}}}$ where $a \geq 2$ and $b \geq 3$ are integers. This is convergent by comparison with the geometric series. Set

$$
\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{a^{b^{k}}} .
$$

We have

$$
\begin{gathered}
\alpha-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}=\sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{a^{b^{k}}}=\frac{1}{a^{b^{n+1}}} \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{a^{b^{k}-b^{n+1}}}, \\
a^{b^{n+1}}\left|\alpha-\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}\right|=\sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{a^{b^{k}-b^{n+1}}} \rightarrow 0 .
\end{gathered}
$$

(The sum on the right approaches 0 as $n \rightarrow \infty$ by comparison with the tails of the geometric series.) Setting $q_{n}=a^{b^{n}}$ and $f(n)=a^{b^{n+1}}$ we have

$$
\frac{q_{n}^{b}}{f(n)}=1 .
$$

Hence $\alpha$ is transcendental using $\kappa=b$.
(vii) Minkoski's theorem says that if $\operatorname{vol}(S)>4|\Delta|$ then $S$ will contain a point of the lattice. Setting $S=\{(x, y):|x|+|y| \leq \sqrt{2|\Delta|}\}$ we obtain a square with vertices at $(0, \pm \sqrt{2|\Delta|})$ and $( \pm \sqrt{2|\Delta|}, 0)$ with area $4|\Delta|$, so $L$ and $M$ can be found. The point $(|L|,|M|)$ lives in a rectangle inside the region bounded by the $x$-axis, the $y$-axis, and the line $y=\sqrt{2|\Delta|}-x$, hence $|L M|$ is the bounded above by the maximum inscribed area. The latter is generated by the square corresponding to the point $\left(\frac{\sqrt{2|\Delta|}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2|\Delta|}}{2}\right)$, which has area $\frac{\Delta \Delta \mid}{2}$.
(viii) Construct a counterexample using the parameters given.
(ix) I'd like to see a proof of Kronecker's Theorem first!

## Chapter 7: Quadratic Fields

Vector space and field: Let $d$ be a square-free integer other than 1 . Then

$$
\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})=\{u+v \sqrt{d}: u, v \in \mathbb{Q}\} .
$$

This is a vector space over $\mathbb{Q}$ with basis $\{1, \sqrt{d}\}$. It is also a field: one can check closure with respect to addition and multiplication and the existence of additive inverses. Moreover, since $\sqrt{d}$ is irrational, $u+v \sqrt{d} \in \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})^{*}$ implies $u^{2}-v^{2} d \neq 0$ implies $(u+v \sqrt{d})^{-1}=\frac{u}{u^{2}-v^{2} d}-\frac{v}{u^{2}-v^{2} d} \sqrt{d} \in \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$. Since $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ has dimension 2 over the rationals, every $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ its the root of a non-zero rational polynomial of degree 2 , hence is algebraic.
Linear Operator and norm: For each $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ we obtain a linear operator $L_{\alpha}: \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d}) \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ via $L_{\alpha}(\beta)=\alpha \beta$. Now set $\alpha=u+v \sqrt{d}$. Then $L_{u+v \sqrt{d}}(1)=u+v \sqrt{d}$ and $L_{u+v \sqrt{d}}(\sqrt{d})=d v+u \sqrt{d}$, hence $L_{u+v \sqrt{d}}$ has matrix representation $\left[\begin{array}{ll}u & d v \\ v & u\end{array}\right]$. The norm of $u+v \sqrt{d}$ is the determinant of $L_{u+v \sqrt{d}}$, hence $N(u+v \sqrt{d})=u^{2}-d v^{2}$. Since $L_{\alpha} L_{\beta}=L_{\alpha \beta}, N(\alpha) N(\beta)=N(\alpha \beta)$. This yields the identity

$$
\left(u_{1}^{2}-d v_{1}^{2}\right)\left(u_{2}^{2}-d v_{2}^{2}\right)=\left(u_{1} u_{2}+v_{1} v_{2} d\right)^{2}-d\left(u_{1} v_{2}+u_{2} v_{1}\right)^{2} .
$$

Note also that $N(\alpha)=\alpha \bar{\alpha}$ where $\bar{\alpha}$ is the conjugate of $\alpha$.
Algebraic integer: A number whose minimal polynomial (rational polynomial of least degree with leading coefficient 1) has integer coefficients.

Degree 1 algebraic integer: minimal polynomial $x-k$ for some $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, hence ordinary integers.
Degree 2 algebraic integers: Let $x=u+v \sqrt{d}$ be an algebraic integer with $v \neq 0$. We can find a rational polynomial satisfied by $x$ as follows: Using $L_{x}$ as above we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\begin{array}{cc}
x & 0 \\
0 & x
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
\sqrt{d}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
u & d v \\
v & u
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
\sqrt{d}
\end{array}\right]} \\
& {\left[\begin{array}{cc}
x-u & -d v \\
-v & x-u
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
\sqrt{d}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
0 \\
0
\end{array}\right] .}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence

$$
x^{2}-2 x u+\left(u^{2}-d v^{2}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left[\begin{array}{cc}
x-u & -d v \\
-v & x-u
\end{array}\right]=0 .
$$

Hence the minimal polynomial is $x^{2}-2 u x+\left(u^{2}-d v^{2}\right)$. Since $x$ is algebraic, $2 u \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $N(x)=u^{2}-d v^{2} \in \mathbb{Z}$. Conversely, any $x$ having this minimal polynomial is an algebraic integer.

## Characterization of degree 2 algebraic integers:

Write $2 u=m, u^{2}-d v^{2}=n, v=p / q$ where $(p, q)=1$. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
u^{2}-d v^{2}=n \\
4 u^{2}-4 d v^{2}=4 n \\
m^{2}-4 d v^{2}=4 n \\
q^{2} m^{2}-4 d p^{2}=4 n q^{2} \\
q^{2}\left(m^{2}-4 n\right)=(2 p)^{2} d .
\end{gathered}
$$

Since $d$ is square-free, we must have $q^{2} \mid(2 p)^{2}$, hence $q \mid 2 p$, hence $q \in\{1,2\}$. We will write $2 v=k$. We now have $m^{2}-d k^{2}=4 n$, hence $m^{2} \equiv d k^{2} \bmod 4$. Bearing in mind that $m^{2}, k^{2} \equiv 0,1 \bmod 4$, consider the cases:
$d \equiv 0 \bmod 4:$ Not possible since $d$ is square-free.
$d \equiv 1 \bmod 4: m^{2} \equiv k^{2} \bmod 4$, hence $m$ and $k$ have the same parity. Writing $m=k+2 p$, we have

$$
x=\frac{k+2 p}{2}+\frac{k}{2} \sqrt{d}=p+k \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2} .
$$

$d \equiv 2 \bmod 4: m^{2} \equiv 2 k^{2} \bmod 4$, therefore $m$ and $k$ are even, $u$ and $v$ are integers, and

$$
x=u+v \sqrt{d} .
$$

$d \equiv 3 \bmod 4: m^{2} \equiv 3 k^{2} \bmod 4$, therefore $m$ and $k$ are even, $u$ and $v$ are integers, and

$$
x=u+v \sqrt{d}
$$

The ring $R_{d}$ of algebraic integers in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ : We have found necessary conditions above for $x$ to be an algebraic integer, but one can check that they are also sufficient, given the polynomial satisfied by $x$. Setting $R_{d}$ equal to the set of algebraic integers $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$, we have

$$
R_{d}= \begin{cases}\mathbb{Z}\left[1, \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}\right] & d \equiv 1 \bmod 4 \\ \mathbb{Z}[1, \sqrt{d}] & d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4\end{cases}
$$

In particular, $R_{d}$ is a ring and is closed with respect to conjugation.
Every algebraic integer has an integer norm. To see this, let $\alpha \in R_{d}$ and write $\alpha=x+y \omega$ where

$$
\omega= \begin{cases}\sqrt{d} & d \equiv 1 \bmod 4 \\ \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2} & d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4\end{cases}
$$

Then

$$
N(\alpha)=\alpha \bar{\alpha}= \begin{cases}x^{2}+x y+\frac{1-d}{4} y^{2} & d \equiv 1 \bmod 4 \\ x^{2}-d y^{2} & d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4 .\end{cases}
$$

We can interpret $N(x+y \omega)$ as a binary quadratic form $f(x, y)$ with discriminant

$$
d(f)= \begin{cases}d & d \equiv 1 \bmod 4 \\ 4 d & d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4\end{cases}
$$

Units, primes, and irreducibles in $R_{d}$ : We will define the units in $R_{d}$ to be the set $U_{d}$ of invertible elements in $R_{d}$. If $\epsilon \in U_{d}$ then $\epsilon \epsilon^{\prime}=1$ for some $\epsilon^{\prime} \in U_{d}$, hence $1=N(1)=N\left(\epsilon \epsilon^{\prime}\right)=N(\epsilon) N\left(\epsilon^{\prime}\right)$, hence $N(\epsilon)= \pm 1$. Conversely, if $\alpha \in R_{d}$ and $N(\alpha)= \pm 1$ then $\alpha \bar{\alpha}= \pm 1$ hence $\alpha^{-1}= \pm \bar{\alpha} \in R_{d}$. So we have proved

$$
U_{d}=\left\{\alpha \in R_{d}: N(\alpha)= \pm 1\right\}
$$

In other words, the units in $R_{d}$ are the numbers in $R_{d}$ norm a unit in $\mathbb{Z}$.
We say that $a \mid b$ in $R_{d}$ if $a=b c$ for some $c \in R_{d}$. Primes $\pi \in R_{d}$ are non-zero non-units that satisfy $\pi|a b \Longrightarrow \pi| a$ or $\pi \mid b$. Irreducibles $\pi \in R_{d}$ are non-zero non-units that satisfy $\pi=a b \Longrightarrow a$ or $b$ is a unit.

Primes are irreducible: Let $\pi$ be prime and suppose $\pi=a b$. Then $\pi \mid a$ or $\pi \mid b$. If $\pi \mid a$, write write $a=\pi a_{0}$. Then $1=a_{0} b$, therefore $b$ is a unit. But if $\pi$ X $a$ then $\pi \mid b$, therefore $a$ is a unit.

Not all irreducibles are primes: Note that $a=b c$ implies $N(a)=N(b) N(c)$ and $a \mid b$ implies $N(a) \mid N(b)$. We can use these properties to show that 2 is irreducible but not prime in $R_{-5}$. Since $-5 \equiv 3 \bmod 4$ we have $R_{-5}=$ $\mathbb{Z}[1, \sqrt{-5}]$. Suppose

$$
2=\left(x_{1}+y_{1} \sqrt{-5}\right)\left(x_{2}+y_{2} \sqrt{-5}\right)
$$

Take norms,

$$
4=\left(x_{1}^{2}+5 y_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}+5 y_{2}^{2}\right)
$$

Since $x^{2}+5 y^{2}=2$ has no solution, one of the two norms on the right is 1 , hence one of the two factors is a unit. Therefore 2 is irreducible. On the other hand, $2 \mid(1+\sqrt{-5})(1-\sqrt{-5})$ yet 2 is a divisor of neither factor since there is no algebraic integer $x+y \sqrt{-5} \in R_{-5}$ that satisfies $1 \pm \sqrt{-5}=2(x+y \sqrt{2})$. Hence 2 is not prime.

Every non-zero non-unit $\alpha$ in $R_{d}$ can be factored into irreducibles: by induction on $|N(\alpha)| \geq 2$. If $|N(\alpha)|=2$, write $\alpha=\beta \gamma$. Taking norms, $N(\alpha)=N(\beta) N(\gamma)$ so $|N(\beta)|=1$ or $|N(\gamma)|=1$, therefore $\beta$ or $\gamma$ is a unit. Now consider $|N(\alpha)|>2$. If $\alpha$ is not irreducible then there must be a way to factor it in the form $\alpha=\beta \gamma$ where neither factor is a unit. Taking norms we see that $1<|N(\beta)|,|N(\gamma)|<|N(\alpha)|$, hence $\beta$ and $\gamma$ are products of irrreducibles, hence $\alpha$ is a product of irrreducibles.
Unique factorization into irreducibles in $R_{d}$ : When all irreducibles are primes in $R_{d}$, we have unique factorization of non-units in $R_{d}$ into irreducibles
in the following sense: When $x_{1} \cdots x_{m}=y_{1} \cdots y_{n}$ in $R_{d}$ with each $x_{i}$ and $y_{j}$ irreducible, then $m=n$ and there are units $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{n}$ and a permutation $\sigma$ such that $y_{i}=u_{i} x_{\sigma(i)}$ for each $i$. We will prove this by induction on $n$. When $n=1$ we have $x_{1} \cdots x_{m}=y_{1}$. Since $y_{1}$ is irreducible, this forces $m=1$ and $x_{1}=y_{1}$. Assume the statement is true for a given $n$. Suppose $x_{1} \cdots x_{m}=y_{1} \cdots y_{n+1}$. Then $m>1$. The product on the right is divisible by $x_{1}$, and since $x_{1}$ is prime it has to be a divisor of some $y_{j}$. Reordering if necessary, $j=1$ and $y_{1}=u_{1} x_{1}$ for some unit $u_{1}$. Cancelling off $x_{1}$ we obtain $x_{2} \cdots x_{m}=u_{1} y_{2} \cdots y_{n+1}$. Equivalently, $\left(v_{1} x_{2}\right) \cdots x_{m}=y_{2} \cdots y_{n+1}$ where $u_{1} v_{1}=1$. We can use the induction hypothesis provided $v_{1} x_{2}$ is irreducible. It is: If $v_{1} x_{2}=\alpha \beta$ then $x_{2}=\left(u_{1} \alpha\right) \beta$, therefore $u_{1} \alpha$ is a unit or $\beta$ is a unit, hence $\alpha$ is a unit or $\beta$ is a unit.
By consideration of norms we can prove that $2,3,1+\sqrt{-5}, 1-\sqrt{-5}$ are irreducible in $R_{-5}$ and neither number in $\{2,3\}$ is an associate of either of the numbers in $\{1+\sqrt{-5}, 1-\sqrt{-5}\}$. On the other hand,

$$
(2)(3)=(1+\sqrt{-5})(1-\sqrt{-5}) .
$$

Hence unique factorization into irreducibles fails in $R_{-5}$.
Units in $R_{d}$ where $d<0$ : For $d \equiv 1 \bmod 4$, i.e. $d=1-4 k$, we have

$$
N(x+y \omega)=x^{2}+x y+k y^{2} .
$$

This is a reduced binary quadratic form. When $k \geq 2$ the output 1 occurs only with $(x, y)=( \pm 1,0)$, so the units in $R_{d}$ are $\pm 1$. When $k=1$ the output 1 occurs only with $(x, y)=( \pm 1,0),(0, \pm 1), \pm(1,-1)$, so the units in $R_{-3}$ are $\pm 1$ and $\pm \frac{1+\sqrt{-3}}{2}$ and $\pm \frac{1-\sqrt{-3}}{2}$.
For $d \equiv 2 \bmod 4$, i.e. $d=2-4 k$, we have

$$
N(x+y \omega)=x^{2}+(4 k-2) y^{2} .
$$

This form is reduced for all $k \geq 1$ and the only units are $\pm 1$. For $d \equiv 3 \bmod$ 4, i.e. $d=3-4 k$, we have

$$
N(x+y \omega)=x^{2}+(4 k-3) y^{2} .
$$

This form is reduced for all $k \geq 1$. For $k \geq 2$ the only units are $\pm 1$. When $k=1$ the units in $R_{-1}$ are $\pm 1, \pm i$.

## Summary:

$R_{-1}$ has units $\pm 1, \pm i$, roots of $x^{2}+1$.
$R_{-2}$ has units $\pm 1$, roots of $x^{2}-1$.
$R_{-3}$ has units $\pm 1, \pm \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{3} i}{2}$, roots of $x^{6}-1$.
$R_{-k}$ has units $\pm 1$ for $k \geq 5$ and $k$ square-free, roots of $x^{2}-1$.
Units in $R_{d}$ where $d>0$ : Consider a square-free integer $d \geq 2$. (Actually, all we require is $\sqrt{d}$ irrational.) We can construct infinitely many units in $\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{d}]$ as follows: $\sqrt{d}$ is irrational and its convergents $p_{n} / q_{n}$ satisfy

$$
\left|\sqrt{d}-p_{n} / q_{n}\right|<1 / q_{n}^{2}
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{gathered}
p_{n}-q_{n} \sqrt{d}=\cos \left(\theta_{n}\right) / q_{n} \\
p_{n}+q_{n} \sqrt{d}=\cos \left(\theta_{n}\right) / q_{n}+2 q_{n} \sqrt{d} \\
\left|N\left(p_{n}-q_{n} \sqrt{d}\right)\right|=\left|\cos \left(\theta_{n}\right)^{2} / q_{n}^{2}+2 \cos \left(\theta_{n}\right) \sqrt{d}\right| \leq 1+2 \sqrt{d} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Since the sequence of norms $N\left(p_{n}-q_{n} \sqrt{d}\right)$ is bounded, there is an infinite subsequence of constant norm $N$. We can finitely partition this subsequence according to $\left(\left[p_{n}\right]_{N},\left[q_{n}\right]_{N}\right)$, congruence classes $\bmod N$, and one of the parts of this partition is infinite. Hence there exist infinitely many pairs $m<n$ such that $p_{m} \equiv p_{n} \bmod N$ and $q_{m} \equiv q_{n} \bmod N$ and $p_{m}^{2}-d q_{m}^{2}=p_{n}^{2}-d q_{n}^{2}=N$. Setting

$$
\eta=\frac{p_{m}-q_{m} \sqrt{d}}{p_{n}-q_{n} \sqrt{d}}=\frac{p_{m} p_{n}-d q_{m} q_{n}}{N}+\frac{p_{m} q_{n}-p_{n} q_{m}}{N} \sqrt{d},
$$

we have

$$
p_{m} p_{n}-d q_{m} q_{n} \equiv p_{n}^{2}-d q_{n}^{2} \equiv 0 \bmod N
$$

and

$$
p_{m} q_{n}-p_{n} q_{m} \equiv 0 \bmod N
$$

Hence $\eta \in R_{d}$ and has norm 1. Note that $\eta=x-y \sqrt{d}$ satisfies $x^{2}-d y^{2}=1$, so it is a solution to the Diophantine equation known as Pell's equation. This argument shows that there are an infinite number of solutions to this equation.

We can characterize the set of units $U_{d}$ in $R_{d}$ as follows: we first claim that there is a unit $\mu=x+y \sqrt{d}>1$. If $\eta>1$, use $\eta$. If $0<\eta<1$, use $1 / \eta$. If $-1<\eta<0$, use $-1 / \eta$. If $\eta<-1$, use $-\eta$. Secondly, we claim that any unit $x+y \sqrt{d}>1$ satisfies $x, y>0$. For if $N(x+y \sqrt{d})=1$ then $x+y \sqrt{d}>(x+y \sqrt{d})^{-1}=x-y \sqrt{d}>0$, and if $N(x+y \sqrt{d})=-1$ then $x+y \sqrt{d}>(x+y \sqrt{d})^{-1}=-x+y \sqrt{d}>0$, and both statements yield $x, y>0$. Therefore $U_{d} \cap(1, \infty)$ has a minimum element $\epsilon$ : let $x_{0}$ be minimum such that there exists at unit $x_{0}+y_{0} \sqrt{d}>1$. If $x_{1}+y_{1} \sqrt{d}<x_{0}+y_{0} \sqrt{d}$ in $U_{d} \cap(1, \infty)$ then $0 \leq x_{1}-x_{0}<\left(y_{0}-y_{1}\right) \sqrt{d}$, hence $y_{1}<y_{0}$. This is satisfied by only finitely many values of $y_{1}$, hence by only finitely many values of $x_{1}+y_{1} \sqrt{d}$ since the value of $y_{1}$ determines the value of $x_{1}$ uniquely. We can identify $\epsilon$ as the minimum element of $\left\{x_{i}+y_{i} \sqrt{d}: i \geq 0\right\}$. Every other unit can be expressed in terms of $\epsilon$ : for any other unit $\delta$ with $\delta>1$ we have $\epsilon^{n} \leq \delta<\epsilon^{n+1}$ for some $n$, hence $1 \leq \delta / \epsilon^{n}<\epsilon$. Since $\delta / \epsilon^{n}$ is a unit and $\epsilon$ is the smallest unit $>1$, we must have $\delta / \epsilon^{n}=1$, i.e. $\delta=\epsilon^{n}$. So the set of all units $>1$ is $\left\{\epsilon^{k}: k \geq 1\right\}$, which implies that the set of all units is $\left\{ \pm \epsilon^{k}: k \in \mathbb{Z}\right\}$ by the argument at the beginning of the pargraph.
Euclidean Fields: Certain quadratic fields, called Euclidean, are endowed with an analogue of the division algorithm: for each $\alpha, \beta \in R_{d}$ with $\beta \neq 0$ there exist $\delta, \rho \in R_{d}$ such that

$$
\alpha=\delta \beta+\rho
$$

with $|N(\rho)|<|N(\delta)|$. This gives rise to an analogue of Euclid's algorithm for constructing the greatest common divisor of $\alpha$ and $\beta \neq 0$ : Form the sequence $\alpha_{0}, \alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots$ with $\left|N\left(\alpha_{1}\right)\right|>\left|N\left(\alpha_{2}\right)\right|>\cdots \geq 0$ via $\alpha_{0}=\alpha, \alpha_{1}=\beta$, and for $k \geq 2, \alpha_{k-2}=\delta_{k-2} \alpha_{k-1}+\alpha_{k}$ where $0 \leq\left|N\left(\alpha_{k}\right)\right|<\left|N\left(\alpha_{k-1}\right)\right|$. The sequence has to terminate with some $\alpha_{n}=0$ for some $n \geq 2$, and $\alpha_{n-1}$ is a greatest common divisor in the sense that $\alpha_{n-1} \mid \alpha$ and $\alpha_{n-1} \mid \beta$, and whenever $x \mid \alpha$ and $x \mid \beta$ we must have $x \mid \alpha_{n-1}$. All greatest common divisors divide each other, hence are associates of each other. To see that $\alpha_{n-1}$ is a greatest common divisor, observe that the recurrence relation can be expressed in the form

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
\alpha_{k-2} \\
\alpha_{k-1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\delta_{k-2} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{k-1} \\
\alpha_{k}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

This can be used to obtain

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\delta_{0} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\delta_{1} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right] \cdots\left[\begin{array}{cc}
\delta_{n-2} & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
\alpha_{0} \\
\alpha_{1}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Simplifying,

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cc}
x & y \\
z & w
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
\alpha \\
\beta
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Hence

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
x a_{n-1} \\
z a_{n-1}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{l}
\alpha \\
\beta
\end{array}\right]
$$

So we can see that $\alpha_{n-1}$ is a common divisor of $\alpha$ and $\beta$. Moreover if $\delta$ is a divisor of both $\alpha$ and $\beta$ then the recurrence relation can be used to show that $\delta$ divides each $\alpha_{k}$, including $\alpha_{n-1}$. Hence $\delta \mid \alpha_{n-1}$ and $\alpha_{n-1}$ is a greatest common divisor. All greatest common divisors are associates of each other.
Note that the inverse of $\left[\begin{array}{cc}\delta_{k} & 1 \\ 1 & 0\end{array}\right]$ is $\left[\begin{array}{cc}0 & 1 \\ 1 & -\delta_{k}\end{array}\right]$. This implies that

$$
\left[\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{n-1} \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -\delta_{n-2}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -\delta_{n-3}
\end{array}\right] \cdots\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -\delta_{0}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{0} \\
\alpha_{1}
\end{array}\right] .
$$

Hence given algebraic integers $\alpha$ and $\beta$ with greatest common divisor $\delta$ there is a pair of algebraic $\mu$ and $\nu$ such that $\mu \alpha+\nu \beta=\delta$. Whenever we have $\mu \alpha+\nu \beta=\rho$ we must have $\delta \mid \rho$. In particular, when $\mu \alpha+\nu \beta=1$ we must have $\delta \mid 1$, hence $\delta$ is a unit. Conversely when the greatest common divisor of $\alpha$ and $\beta$ is a unit, i.e. $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are coprime, there exist $\mu$ and $\nu$ such that $\mu \alpha+\nu \beta=1$.

Euclidean quadratic fields have unique factorization: let $\pi$ be an irreducible algebraic integer in a Euclidean quadratic field $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ and suppose $\pi \mid \alpha \beta$. We will show that $\pi \mid \alpha$ or $\pi \mid \beta$. Assume $\pi \not \backslash \alpha$. We claim that $\pi$ and $\alpha$ are coprime. To see this, suppose $\delta \mid \pi$ and $\delta \mid \alpha$. Write $\pi=\pi_{0} \delta$ and $\alpha=\alpha_{0} \delta$. If $\delta$ is not a unit then $\pi_{0}$ is a unit and $\alpha=\alpha_{0} \pi_{0}^{-1} \pi$ hence $\pi \mid \alpha$ : contradiction. Therefore $\delta$ must be a unit, hence a divisor of 1 . Given that $\pi$ and $\alpha$ are coprime, there exist $\mu$ and $\nu$ such that $\mu \pi+\nu \alpha=1$, which yields $\mu \pi \beta+\nu \alpha \beta=\beta$, and since $\pi|\alpha \beta, \pi| \beta$. Hence $\pi$ is prime. We have shown that all irreducibles are primes, so there is unique factorization in $R_{d}$ when it is Euclidean.
Our task now is to identify $d$ such that $R_{d}$ is Euclidean.

## Necessary conditions for $R_{d}$ to be Euclidean:

First consider $d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4$. Then $R_{d}=\mathbb{Z}[1, \sqrt{d}]$ and there exist integers $x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}$ such that

$$
\sqrt{d}=2\left(x_{1}+y_{1} \sqrt{d}\right)+\left(x_{2}+y_{2} \sqrt{d}\right)
$$

where $\left|x_{2}^{2}-d y_{2}^{2}\right|<4$. When $d \leq-5$ we have $x_{2}^{2}+5 y_{2}^{2}<4$, hence $y_{2}=0$ and

$$
\sqrt{d}=\left(2 x_{1}+x_{2}\right)+2 y_{1} \sqrt{d}
$$

which is not possible because $2 y_{1} \neq 1$. Hence $d \geq-2$ is necessary.
Next consider $d \equiv 1 \bmod 4$. Then $R_{d}=\mathbb{Z}\left[1, \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}\right]$, and there exist integers $x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}$ such that

$$
\frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}=2\left(x_{1}+y_{1} \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}\right)+\left(x_{2}+y_{2} \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}\right)
$$

where $\left|\left(x_{2}+y_{2}\right)^{2}-d y_{2}^{2} / 4\right|<4$. When $d \leq-15, y_{2}=0$. This yields

$$
\frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}=\left(2 x_{1}+x_{2}\right)+2 y_{1} \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}
$$

which forces $2 y_{1}=1$, which is not possible. Hence $d \geq-11$ is necessary.

## Sufficient conditions for $R_{d}$ to be Euclidean:

Let $\alpha, \beta \in R_{d}$ with $\beta \neq 0$. Write $\alpha / \beta=u+v \sqrt{d}$ where $u, v \in \mathbb{Q}$. Consider the cases.
$d \equiv 2,3 \bmod 4:$ Algebraic integers are of the form $x+y \sqrt{d}$ where $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$. Choosing $x$ closest to $u$ and $y$ closest to $v$ we have

$$
\alpha=(x+y \sqrt{d}) \beta+(r+s \sqrt{d}) \beta
$$

where $|r|,|s| \leq \frac{1}{2}$. Restricting $d$ to $|d| \leq 3$ we have $d \in\{-2,-1,2,3\}$. When $|d| \leq 2$ we have

$$
\left|r^{2}-d s^{2}\right| \leq r^{2}+2 s^{2} \leq \frac{3}{4}
$$

When $d=3$ we have

$$
-3 / 4 \leq-3 s^{2} \leq r^{2}-3 s^{2} \leq r^{2} \leq \frac{1}{4}
$$

In all cases

$$
|N((r+s \sqrt{d}) \beta)| \leq \frac{3}{4}|N(\beta)|<|N(\beta)| .
$$

Conclusion:

$$
\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-2}), \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-1}), \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2}), \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{3})
$$

are Euclidean.
$d \equiv 1 \bmod 4:$ Algebraic integers are of the form $x+\frac{y}{2}+\frac{y}{2} \sqrt{d}$ where $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$. Choose $y$ so that $\frac{y}{2}$ is closest to $v$, then choose $x$ so that $x+\frac{y}{2}$ is closest to $u$, i.e. $x$ is closest to $u-\frac{y}{2}$. This yields

$$
\alpha=\left(x+y \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}\right) \beta+(r+s \sqrt{d}) \beta
$$

where $|r| \leq \frac{1}{2}$ and $|s| \leq \frac{1}{4}$. Restricting $d$ to $|d| \leq 13$ we have $d \in\{-11,-7,-3,5,13\}$. When $|d| \leq 11$,

$$
\left|r^{2}-s^{2} d\right| \leq r^{2}+11 s^{2} \leq \frac{15}{16}
$$

When $d=13$,

$$
\frac{-13}{16} \leq-13 s^{2} \leq r^{2}-13 s^{2} \leq r^{2} \leq \frac{1}{4}
$$

In all cases

$$
|N((r+s \sqrt{d}) \beta)| \leq \frac{15}{16}|N(\beta)|<|N(\beta)| .
$$

Conclusion:

$$
\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-11}), \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-7}), \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-3}), \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5}), \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{13})
$$

are Euclidean.

## Section 7.6: The Gaussian Field

The Gaussian Field $\mathbb{Q}(i)$ is Euclidean and has ring of algebraic integers $R=$ $\mathbb{Z}[1, i]$. We will give a complete description of the units and primes in $R$.
Units: As determined above, $1,-1, i,-i$.
Primes: Any irreducible $\pi$ divides its norm, therefore divides a prime number, which must be unique ( $\pi \mid p$ and $\pi \mid q$ where $p \neq q$ implies $\pi \mid(p x+q y)$ and in particular $\pi \mid 1$ : contradiction). We will characterize irreducibles according to the prime numbers they divide.
Let $p$ be a prime number. Write $p=\pi_{1} \cdots \pi_{n}$ (factored into irreducibles). Taking norms, $p^{2}=N\left(\pi_{1}\right) \cdots N\left(\pi_{n}\right)$, hence $n \leq 2$. There are two cases to consider.
Case 1: -1 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$. Then we have $x^{2}+1$ divisible by $p$, which rules out $p$ irreducible (lest $p \mid(x+\sqrt{-1})$ or $p \mid(x-\sqrt{-1})$, which
impossible). Hence $p=\left(a_{1}+b_{1} \sqrt{-1}\right)\left(a_{2}+b_{2} \sqrt{-1}\right)$, which forces $p=(a+$ $b \sqrt{-1})(a-b \sqrt{-1})=a^{2}+b^{2}$. The corresponding irreducibles are associates of $a+b \sqrt{-1}$ where $a^{2}+b^{2}=p$.
Case 2: When -1 is not a quadratic residue $\bmod p$ we cannot have $a^{2}+b^{2}=p$, so $p$ is irreducible.

The prime numbers $p$ for which -1 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$ are 2 and odd primes of the form $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4$. So the irreducibles in $R_{-1}$ are associates of $a+b \sqrt{-1}$ whenever $a^{2}+b^{2}=p$ for some prime $p$, which occurs when $p=2$ and $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$, and all primes $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$.

## Chapter 7 Exercises

(i) $N(1+\sqrt{2})=-1$, hence $1+\sqrt{2}$ is a unit in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$. It is certainly the smallest unit greater than 1 of the form $x+y \sqrt{d}$ where $x, y>0$ belong to $\mathbb{Z}$, hence it generates all the units as described in Section 7.3 above. Also, $N(2+\sqrt{3})=1$ and $N(1+\sqrt{3})=-2$ and $1+k \sqrt{3}>2+\sqrt{3}$ when $k \geq 2$, hence the units in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{3})$ are $\pm(2+\sqrt{3})^{n}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Just out of curiosity, we have $(2+\sqrt{3})^{5}=362+209 \sqrt{3}$, and $362^{2}-3(209)^{2}=1$.
(ii) By construction, $\alpha=\frac{1+n \sqrt{d}}{1-n \sqrt{d}}$ satisfies $N(\alpha)=1$. We just have to verify that it can expressed in terms of the appropriate integral basis, $\{1, \sqrt{d}\}$ if $d \equiv$ $2,3 \bmod 4$ or $\left\{1, \frac{1+\sqrt{d}}{2}\right\}$ if $d \equiv 1 \bmod 4$. Checking cases yields a finite number of values of $n$ and $d$. Examples are $\alpha=1,-3-2 \sqrt{2},-2-\sqrt{3}, \frac{-3-\sqrt{5}}{2}, i$.
(iii) Let $p$ be a prime number. Then $p$ is divisible by at least one irreducible $\pi_{p}$ and we can write $p=\alpha_{p} \pi_{p}$. If $p$ and $q$ are distinct primes with $\pi_{p}=\pi_{q}$ then, choosing integers $r$ and $s$ such that $r p+s q=1$, we have $r \alpha_{p} \pi_{p}+s \alpha_{q} \pi_{p}=1$, hence $\pi_{p}\left(r \alpha_{p}+s \alpha_{q}\right)=1$, hence $\pi_{p}$ is a unit. Contradiction. So the $\pi_{p}$ are distinct.
(iv) $2=(-1+\sqrt{3})(1+\sqrt{3})$. Factors have norm -2 , hence are not units. Therefore 2 is not irreducible.
(v) 2 is irreducible: If $2=\alpha \beta$ then $4=N(\alpha) N(\beta)$. If neither $\alpha$ nor $\beta$ is a unit then $\pm 2=N(\alpha)=x^{2}+6 y^{2}$, which is impossible. Similarly 3 is irreducible. $\sqrt{-6}$ is irreducible: suppose $\sqrt{-6}=\alpha \beta$. Then $6=N(\alpha) N(\beta)$. We have seen that neither norm in the product is 2 or 3 , which just leaves 1 or 6 . The numbers 2 and 3 are not associates of the numbers $\sqrt{-6}$ by comparison of norms. So $R_{-6}$ does not have unique factorization.
(vi) Write $\left(x_{1}+y_{1} \sqrt{-17}\right)\left(x_{2}+y_{2} \sqrt{-17}\right)=1+\sqrt{-17}$. Taking norms, $\left(x_{1}^{2}+\right.$ $\left.17 y_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}+17 y_{2}^{2}\right)=18$. The only possibilities for $x_{1}^{2}+17 x_{2}^{2}$ are divisors of 18 , namely $1,2,3,6,9,12$ or 18 . The divisors $2,3,6,9$ and 12 are not possible, hence one of the two factors is a unit. This implies $1+\sqrt{-17}$ is irreducible. Similarly, $1-\sqrt{-17}$ is irreducible. On the other hand, we have $2 \cdot 3^{2}=(1+\sqrt{-17})(1-\sqrt{-17})$. The number 2 is irreducible: $2=\alpha \beta$ implies $N(\alpha) \mid 4$, the only possibilities being $N(\alpha) \in\{1,4\}$. By comparison of norms, 2 is not an associate of $1 \pm \sqrt{-17}$. Hence we have non-unique factorization into irreducibles.
(vii) $-2 \cdot 5=\sqrt{-10} \sqrt{-10}$ and no integer solution to $x^{2}+10 y^{2}=2,5$. $2 \cdot 7=(1+\sqrt{-13})(1-\sqrt{-13})$ and no integer solution to $x^{2}+13 y^{2}=2,7$. $-2 \cdot 7=\sqrt{-14} \sqrt{-14}$ and no integer solution to $x^{2}+14 y^{2}=2,7 .-3 \cdot 5=$ $\sqrt{-15} \sqrt{-15}$ and no integer solution to $(x+y / 2)^{2}+15 y^{2} / 4=3,5$ because no integer solution to $(2 x+y)^{2}+15 y^{2}=12,20$.
(viii) We have $N(x+y \sqrt{10})=x^{2}-10 y^{2} \equiv x^{2} \equiv 0,1,4 \bmod 5$, hence there is no solution to $N(x+y \sqrt{10})= \pm 2, \pm 3$. This implies that $4+\sqrt{10}$ is irreducible: $\left(x_{1}+y_{1} \sqrt{10}\right)\left(x_{2}+y_{2} \sqrt{10}\right)=4+\sqrt{10}$ implies, after computing norms, $\left(x_{1}^{2}-10 y_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x_{2}^{2}-10 y_{2}^{2}\right)=6$. Hence each norm is a divisor of 6 , hence $\pm 1$ or $\pm 6$, hence one of the factors is a unit. Given that $2 \cdot 3=(4+\sqrt{10})(4-\sqrt{10})$ and that none of the irreducible divisors of 2 is an associate of $4+\sqrt{10}$, we have non-unique factorization into irreducibles.
(ix) Applying Euclid's Algorithm we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
5+4 \sqrt{3}=(2+0 \sqrt{3})(1+2 \sqrt{3})+(3+0 \sqrt{3}) \\
1+2 \sqrt{3}=(0+\sqrt{3})(3+0 \sqrt{3})+(1-\sqrt{3}) \\
2+0 \sqrt{3}=(-2-2 \sqrt{3})(1-\sqrt{3})-1 \\
1-\sqrt{3}=(-1+\sqrt{3})(-1)+0 .
\end{gathered}
$$

This yields

$$
\begin{gathered}
{\left[\begin{array}{c}
-1 \\
0
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 1-\sqrt{3}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 2+2 \sqrt{3}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0-\sqrt{3}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
1 & -2+0 \sqrt{3}
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{l}
5+4 \sqrt{3} \\
1+2 \sqrt{3}
\end{array}\right],} \\
(5+2 \sqrt{3})(5+4 \sqrt{3})+(-12-6 \sqrt{3})(1+2 \sqrt{3})=1
\end{gathered}
$$

(x) Any irreducible divides its norm, therefore divides a prime number, which must be unique because if $\pi$ divides distinct primes then it divides their greatest common divisor 1 . We will characterize irreducibles according to the prime numbers they divide. Let $p$ be a prime. Write $p=\pi_{1} \cdots \pi_{n}$. Taking norms, $p^{2}=N\left(\pi_{1}\right) \cdots N\left(\pi_{n}\right)$, hence $n \leq 2$. When 2 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$ we have $x^{2}-2$ divisible by $p$, which rules out $p$ irreducible (lest $p \mid(x+\sqrt{2})$ or $p \mid(x-\sqrt{2})$, which impossible given that algebraic integers are of the form $a+b \sqrt{2}$ for integers $a$ and $b)$. Hence $p=\left(a_{1}+b_{1} \sqrt{2}\right)\left(a_{2}+\right.$ $b_{2} \sqrt{2}$ ), which forces $p=(a+b \sqrt{2})(a-b \sqrt{2})=a^{2}-2 b^{2}$. The corresponding irreducibles are associates of $a+b \sqrt{2}$ where $a^{2}-2 b^{2}=p$. In short, expressions of the form $(1+\sqrt{2})^{k}(a+b \sqrt{2})$ where $a^{2}-2 b^{2}=p$. When 2 is not a quadratic residue $\bmod p$ we cannot have $a^{2}-2 b^{2}=p$, so $p$ is irreducible. The prime numbers $p$ for which 2 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$ are 2 and odd primes of the form $p \equiv \pm 1 \bmod 8$.
(xi) The problem statement is not quite right. Let $\pi$ be a Gaussian prime. If $\pi=p$, a prime number, then writing $\alpha=(p x+r)+(p y+s) i$, we have $\alpha \equiv r+i s \bmod p$, where $0 \leq r<p, 0 \leq s<p$. The representatives $r+i s$ are distinct $\bmod \pi$. Now suppose $(\alpha, p)=1$. Then $\alpha\left(r_{1}+s_{1} i\right) \equiv \alpha\left(r_{2}+s_{2} i\right)$ mod $\pi$ implies $p \mid \alpha\left(\left(r_{2}-r_{1}\right)+\left(s_{2}-s_{1}\right) i\right)$ implies $p \mid\left(\left(r_{2}-r_{1}\right)+\left(s_{2}-s_{1}\right) i\right)$ implies $r_{1}+s_{1} i=r_{2}+s_{2} i$. Hence multiplication by $\alpha$ permutes the non-zero $r+s i \bmod \pi$. Forming the product of all $p^{2}-1$ expressions of the form $\alpha(r+s i)$ where $r+s i \neq 0$ yields the product of all $p^{2}-1$ of the non-zero class representatives, hence $\alpha^{N(\pi)-1}=\alpha^{p^{2}-1} \equiv 1 \bmod \pi$.
Next, consider $\pi=a+b i$ where $a^{2}+b^{2}=p$, a prime number. Then $b \not \equiv 0$ $\bmod p$. We claim that every Gaussian integer is equivalent to some element in $\{0,1, \ldots, p-1\} \bmod \pi$. Given $\alpha=x+y i$ we have $\alpha \equiv \alpha-z \pi=$ $(x-a z)+(y-b z) i \bmod \pi$ for any integer $z$. There is a solution to $y-b z \equiv 0$ $\bmod p$, hence $\bmod \pi$. Using this value of $z$ we obtain $\alpha \equiv x-a z \bmod \pi$. We also have $x-a z \equiv r \bmod p$, hence $\bmod \pi$, for some $0 \leq r<p$. The representatives $0,1, \ldots, p-1$ are distinct $\bmod \pi: \pi \mid(r-s)$ implies $r-s=\kappa \pi$ implies $(r-s)^{2}=N(\kappa) p$ implies $p \mid(r-s)^{2}$ implies $p \mid(r-s)$ implies $r=s$.
Now consider $(\alpha, \pi)=1$. Then $\{\pi, 2 \pi, \ldots,(p-1) \pi\}$ is a permutation of $\{1,2, \ldots, p-1\} \bmod \pi: \alpha r \equiv \alpha s \bmod \pi$ implies $\pi \mid \alpha(r-s)$ implies $\pi \mid(r-s)$ implies $r \equiv s \bmod \pi$. Hence $(1 \alpha)(2 \alpha) \cdots((p-1) \alpha) \equiv(p-1)!\bmod \pi$, which implies $\pi \mid\left(\alpha^{p-1}-1\right)(p-1)!$. Since $((p-1)!, p)=1, a(p-1)!+b \pi \bar{\pi}=1$ for integers some pair of integers $a, b$, hence $((p-1)!, \pi)=1$. Therefore $\pi \mid\left(\alpha^{p-1}-1\right)$. Hence $\alpha^{N(\pi)-1}=\alpha^{p-1} \equiv 1 \bmod \pi$.

## Chapter 8: Diophantine Equations

## Section 8.1: The Pell Equation

The Pell equation is $x^{2}-d y^{2}=1$ where $d$ is a non-square positive integer. We will consider more generally solutions to $x^{2}-d y^{2}= \pm 1$ where $x$ and $y$ are positive integers. Since we have already found all units in $Q(\sqrt{2})$ and $Q(\sqrt{3})$ in Exercise 7.1, we will assume without loss of generality that $d \geq 5$ when considering the equation $x^{2}-d y^{2}=-1$.
When $x^{2}-d y^{2}=1$ then we have we have

$$
x-y \sqrt{d}=1 /(x+y \sqrt{d})>0
$$

hence $x>y \sqrt{d}$ and $x / y>\sqrt{d}$. Substituting this into

$$
x-y \sqrt{d}=1 /(x+y \sqrt{d})
$$

yields

$$
|x-y \sqrt{d}|<1 / 2 y \sqrt{d}
$$

This implies $x / y=p_{n} / q_{n}$, one of the convergents to $\sqrt{d}$. Since $(x, y)=1$ and $\left(p_{n}, q_{n}\right)=1$, this forces $x=p_{n}$ and $y=q_{n}$. Since $p_{n} / q_{n}>\sqrt{d}, n$ must be an odd number.
When $x^{2}-d y^{2}=-1$ we have $(2-\sqrt{d}) y<0<x$ hence $2 y<x+y \sqrt{d}$ hence $|x-y \sqrt{d}|=\frac{1}{x+y \sqrt{d}}<\frac{1}{2 y}$ hence $\left|\sqrt{d}-\frac{x}{y}\right|<\frac{1}{2 y^{2}}$ hence $x / y$ is a convergent of the form $p_{n} / q_{n}$. We also have $x-y \sqrt{d}=\frac{-1}{x+y \sqrt{d}}<0$, hence $\sqrt{d}>\frac{p_{n}}{q_{n}}$, hence $n$ must be even.
We next consider which convergents $p_{n} / q_{n}$ satisfy $p_{n}^{2}-d q_{n}^{2}= \pm 1$. Let $\theta=$ $\sqrt{d}+[\sqrt{d}]$. Then $\theta^{\prime}=-\sqrt{d}+[\sqrt{d}]$. In other words, $\theta>1$ and $-1<\theta^{\prime}<0$. Therefore $\theta$ is purely perodic and we have

$$
\theta=\left[\overline{b_{0}, \cdots, b_{m-1}}\right]
$$

for some minimal value of $m \geq 1$. This implies

$$
\sqrt{d}=\left[b_{0}-[\sqrt{d}], \overline{b_{1}, \ldots, b_{m}}\right]=\left[a_{0}, \overline{a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}}\right] .
$$

In other words, $a_{k}=a_{k+m}=a_{k+2 m}=\cdots$ for all $k \geq 1$. When $p_{n}^{2}-d q_{n}^{2}=1$ we have $n$ odd and

$$
a_{n+1}+\frac{1}{\theta_{n+2}}=\theta_{n+1}=\frac{p_{n-1}-q_{n-1} \sqrt{d}}{q_{n} \sqrt{d}-p_{n}}=
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left(-p_{n-1}+q_{n-1} \sqrt{d}\right)\left(p_{n}+q_{n} \sqrt{d}\right)= \\
-p_{n-1} p_{n}+d q_{n-1} q_{n}+\left(p_{n} q_{n-1}-p_{n-1} q_{n}\right) \sqrt{d}= \\
-p_{n-1} p_{n}+d q_{n-1} q_{n}+(-1)^{n+1} \sqrt{d}= \\
-p_{n-1} p_{n}+d q_{n-1} q_{n}+a_{0}+\frac{1}{\theta_{1}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Comparing the expressions that are less than $1,1 / \theta_{n+2}=1 / \theta_{1}$, hence $\theta_{n+2}=$ $\theta_{1}$. This implies a period of $n+1$ in the sequence $a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}, \ldots$, which forces $m \mid(n+1)$. Hence we have $n=k m-1$ for some $k$.
When $p_{n}^{2}-d q_{n}^{2}=-1$ we have $n$ even and

$$
\begin{gathered}
a_{n+1}+\frac{1}{\theta_{n+2}}=\theta_{n+1}=\frac{p_{n-1}-q_{n-1} \sqrt{d}}{q_{n} \sqrt{d}-p_{n}}= \\
\left(p_{n-1}-q_{n-1} \sqrt{d}\right)\left(p_{n}+q_{n} \sqrt{d}\right)= \\
p_{n-1} p_{n}-d q_{n-1} q_{n}-\left(p_{n} q_{n-1}-p_{n-1} q_{n}\right) \sqrt{d}= \\
-p_{n-1} p_{n}+d q_{n-1} q_{n}+(-1)^{n+2} \sqrt{d}= \\
-p_{n-1} p_{n}+d q_{n-1} q_{n}+a_{0}+\frac{1}{\theta_{1}}
\end{gathered}
$$

Comparing the expressions that are less than $1,1 / \theta_{n+2}=1 / \theta_{1}$, hence $\theta_{n+2}=$ $\theta_{1}$. This implies a period of $n+1$ in the sequence $a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}, \ldots$, which forces $m \mid(n+1)$. Hence we have $n=k m-1$ for some $k$. Since $n$ must be even, $m$ must be odd, so there is no solution to $x^{2}-d y^{2}$ when the period of the $\sqrt{d}$ is even.

We next show that every $n=k m-1$ of the right parity is a solution to $x^{2}-y^{2}= \pm 1$. By periodicity we have $\theta_{n+2}=\theta_{1}$, hence

$$
\sqrt{d}=\frac{\theta_{n+2} p_{n+1}+p_{n}}{\theta_{n+2} q_{n+1}+q_{n}}=\frac{\theta_{1} p_{n+1}+p_{n}}{\theta_{1} q_{n+1}+q_{n}} .
$$

Substituting $1 / \theta_{1}=\sqrt{d}-a_{0}$ we obtain

$$
\sqrt{d}=\frac{p_{n+1}+p_{n}\left(\sqrt{d}-a_{0}\right)}{q_{n+1}+q_{n}\left(\sqrt{d}-a_{0}\right)},
$$

and rearranging we obtain

$$
\sqrt{d}\left(q_{n+1}-q_{n} a_{0}-p_{n}\right)=p_{n+1}-p_{n} a_{0}-q_{n} d
$$

Hence both sides are zero. Equating the two resulting expressions for $a_{0}$ yields

$$
\frac{q_{n+1}-p_{n}}{q_{n}}=\frac{p_{n+1}-q_{n} d}{p_{n}} .
$$

Rearranging this yields

$$
p_{n}^{2}-q_{n}^{2} d=-\left(p_{n+1} q_{n}-q_{n+1} p_{n}\right)=-(-1)^{n+2}=(-1)^{n+1}
$$

Theorem: $p_{m k-1}+q_{m k-1} \sqrt{d}=\left(p_{m-1}+q_{m-1} \sqrt{d}\right)^{k}$ for all $k \geq 1$.
Proof: We have $U_{d} \cap(1, \infty)=\left\{\eta^{k}: k \geq 1\right\}$. Let $k_{0}$ be the least positive integer such that $\eta^{k_{0}}$ has integer coefficients of 1 and $\sqrt{d}$. Then for $k \geq 1$, $\eta^{k}$ has integer coefficients if and only $k_{0} \mid k$. This is clearly sufficient. To prove necessity, suppose $\eta^{k}$ has integer coefficients and write $k=q k_{0}+r$ with $0 \leq r<k_{0}$. Then $\eta^{r}=\eta^{k} \eta^{-q k_{0}}$. Since $\eta^{q k_{0}}=\left(\eta^{k_{0}}\right)^{q}$, $\eta^{q k_{0}}$ has integer coefficients, and since it has norm $\pm 1, \eta^{-q k_{0}}$ also has integer coefficients. Hence $\eta^{r}$ has integer coefficients, which forces $r=0$. Hence the set of units in $(1, \infty)$ with integer coefficients is $\left\{\mu^{k}: k \geq 1\right\}$ where $\mu=\eta^{k_{0}}$. So the solutions to $\left|x^{2}-d y^{2}\right|=1$ are embedded as the coefficients in the list $\mu<$ $\mu^{2}<\mu^{3}<\cdots$. But this list is equal to $p_{m-1}+q_{m-1} \sqrt{d}<p_{2 m-1}+q_{2 m-1} \sqrt{d}<$ $p_{3 m-1}+q_{3 m-1} \sqrt{d} \cdots$, hence the theorem is true.
An example is given in the textbook to the fundamental solutions to $x^{2}-$ $97 y^{2}=-1$ and $x^{2}-97 y^{2}=1$. It is hard enough to find the fundamental solution to the first equation by looking at convergents. It would be much harder to find the fundamental solution to the second equation by convergents (at least by hand), but having found the first solution we just square it to produce the second solution.
When $p \equiv 1 \bmod 4$ is a prime number, then $x^{2}-p y^{2}=-1$ always has a solution. Reason: First choose a solution to $x^{2}-p y^{2}=1$ with $x, y>0$. Then $x^{2}-y^{2} \equiv 1 \bmod 4$, which forces $y$ even and $x$ odd. Write $x=2 k+1, y=2 j$. Then $x^{2}-1=p y^{2}$ yields $k(k+1)=p j^{2}$. There are two cases to consider.
Case 1: $p \mid k$. Write $k=k_{0} p$. Then we have $k_{0}(k+1)=j^{2}$. Since $k$ and $k+1$ are coprime, $k_{0}$ and $k+1$ are coprime, and we have $k_{0}=Y^{2}$ and
$k+1=X^{2}$. This yields $X^{2}=k+1=p Y^{2}+1, X^{2}-p Y^{2}=1$. Note that $X \leq X^{2}=k+1=\frac{x+1}{2}<x$ since $x>1$.
Case 2. $p \mid(k+1)$. Write $k+1=k_{0} p$. Then $k k_{0}=j^{2}$, and since $k$ and $k+1$ are coprime, $k$ and $k_{0}$ are coprime, and we have $k=X^{2}, k_{0}=Y^{2}$, $X^{2}+1=k+1=p k_{0}=p Y^{2}, X^{2}-p Y^{2}=-1$.
So a solution to $x^{2}-p y^{2}=1$ yields either another solution $X^{2}-p Y^{2}=1$ with $x<X$ or to a solution $X^{2}-p Y^{2}=-1$. We cannot fall into Case 1 indefinitely, so eventually we will arrive in Case 2 and produce the desired solution.

Section 8.3: The Mordell Equation $y^{3}=x^{2}+k$

1. Chords and tangents in projective space.

Homogenous polynomials $F(x, y, z)$ satisfy $F(\lambda x, \lambda y, \lambda z)=\lambda^{n} F(x, y, z)$ where $n$ is the total degree of $F(x, y, z)$. Solutions to a polynomial equation $f(x, y)=$ 0 can be embedded in the set of solutions to a polynomial equation $F(x, y, z)=$ 0 where $F(x, y, z)$ is homogeneous and $F(x, y, 1)=f(x, y)$. Solutions to $F(x, y, z)=0$ with $z=0$ are called points at infinity. Any rational solution $(x, y, z)$ to $F(x, y, z)=0$ with $z \neq 0$ gives rise to the rational solution $(x / z, y / z)$ to $f(x, y)=0$ since $f(x / z, y / z)=F(x / z, y / z, 1)=z^{-n} F(x, y, z)=$ 0.

On page 80 it is stated that for any non-zero integer $k$ the curve $y^{2}=x^{3}+k$ has the property that the chord joining any two rational points on the curve $y^{2} z=x^{3}+k z^{3}$ intersects the curve again at a rational point. For example, the curve $y^{2}=x^{3}+17$ is associated with the homogeneous equation $y^{2} z=$ $x^{3}+17 z^{3}$ and two of its rational points are $(0,1,0)$ and $(-2,-3,1)$. The chord between them has coordinates $(1-t)(0,1,0)+t(-2,-3,1)=(-2 t, 1-4 t, t)$. Solutions to the homogeneous equation on this chord satisfy $(1-4 t)^{2} t=$ $(-2 t)^{3}+17 t^{3}$, i.e. $t(t-1)(7 t-1)=0$. There are three solutions, $t=0,1, \frac{1}{7}$. Solutions $t=0$ and $t=1$ correspond to $(0,1,0)$ and $(-2,-3,1)$ while $t=\frac{1}{7}$ yields $\left(\frac{-2}{7}, \frac{3}{7}, \frac{1}{7}\right)$, which yields the solution $(x, y)=(-2,3)$. Of course, this example is trivial because when $(a, b)$ is a solution, so is $(a,-b)$. To take another example, two rational solutions are $(2,5,1)$ and $(-2,3,1)$. The chord between them is $(2-4 t, 5-2 t, 1)$. Solutions to the homogeneous equation satisfy $t(t-1)(16 t-7)=0$ and $t=\frac{7}{16}$ yields the solution $\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{33}{8}, 1\right)$. Hence we obtain the solution $(1 / 4,33 / 8)$. Another way to generate new solutions from old is to find the point of intersection between an existing solution and
the tangent to the curve at that solution. Apparently the rational solutions on the Mordell curve $y^{2}=x^{3}+k$ satisfy a kind of group law.

Solutions to a homogeneous equation live on lines through the origin. The set of all non-trivial lines forms projective space and one can study solutions to polynomial equations in this context.
2. Quadratic residues.

Rearranging $y^{2}=x^{3}+k$ into

$$
y^{2}=x^{3}-a^{3}+a^{3}+k=(x-a)\left(x^{2}+a x+a^{2}\right)+\left(a^{3}+k\right)
$$

and reducing by a prime that divides $x-a$ or $x^{2}+a x+a^{2}$ yields $y^{2} \equiv a^{3}+k$ $\bmod p$. Hence $a^{3}+k$ is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$ and we can ask if such a thing is possible.
For example, suppose there is a solution to $y^{2}=x^{3}+11$. As $x$ and $y$ range through $0,1,2,3 \bmod 4, y^{2}$ ranges through $0,1,0,1 \bmod 4$ and $x^{3}+11$ ranges through $3,0,3,2 \bmod 4$, hence we must have $y \equiv 0,2 \bmod 4$ and $x \equiv 1 \bmod$ 4. Choosing $a=-3$ we obtain $a^{3}+k=-16$ and $x^{2}+a x+a^{2} \equiv 3 \bmod 4$. Therefore $x^{2}+a x+a^{2}$ has a prime divisor $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$. Reducing mod $p$ we find that -16 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$, which implies that -1 is a quadratic residue $\bmod p$, which is not possible given $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$. So there is no solution.

## 3. Factorization in $\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{k}]$.

Consider the equation $y^{2}=x^{3}-11$. We will establish some necessary conditions on $x$ and $y$, assuming that there is a solution. We have

$$
(y-\sqrt{-11})(y+\sqrt{-11})=x^{3} .
$$

We will show that the two factors $y+\sqrt{-11}$ and $y-\sqrt{-11}$ are coprime, then exploit unique factorization to determine $x$ and $y$.
By unique factorization in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-11})$, any common irreducible divisor $\pi$ of $y-\sqrt{-11}$ and $y+\sqrt{-11}$ is a divisor of $x^{3}$, hence of $x$ by primality. Since $\pi$ must be a divisor of $(y+\sqrt{-11})-(y-\sqrt{-11})=2 \sqrt{-11}$, we must have $N(\pi) \mid$ 44. Hence $N(\pi) \in\{1,2,4,11,22,44\}$. We also have $N(\pi) \mid x^{2}$, which implies that any prime divisor of $N(\pi)$ is a divisor of $x$. We can rule out some of the prime divisors of $N(\pi)$ by considering the prime divisors of $x$. If $2 \mid x$ then $y^{2} \equiv-11 \equiv 5 \bmod 8$, which is not possible. Also, if $11 \mid x$ then $11 \mid y$
and the equation implies $11 y_{0}^{2}=11^{2} x_{0}^{3}-1$, which is also not possible. So in fact $N(\pi)=1$ and $y-\sqrt{-11}$ and $y+\sqrt{-11}$ must be coprime.
Irreducible factorizations yield $y-\sqrt{-11}=\alpha_{1} \cdots \alpha_{j}, y+\sqrt{-11}=\beta_{1}, \ldots \beta_{k}$, $x=\gamma_{1} \cdots \gamma_{l}$. This yields

$$
\alpha_{1} \cdots \alpha_{j} \beta_{1}, \ldots \beta_{k}=\gamma_{1}^{3} \cdots \gamma_{l}^{3}
$$

By unique factorization, any irreducible appears a multiple of 3 times (up to associates) in $y+\sqrt{-11}$, hence $y+\sqrt{-11}$ is a perfect cube times a unit. Given that the units in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-11})$ are $\pm 1$, this implies

$$
\begin{gathered}
y+\sqrt{-11}=\left(a+\frac{b}{2}(1+\sqrt{-11})\right)^{3}= \\
a^{3}+\left(3 a^{2} b\right) / 2-\left(15 a b^{2}\right) / 2-4 b^{3}+\left(3 / 2 a^{2} b+3 / 2 a b^{2}-b^{3}\right) \sqrt{-11}
\end{gathered}
$$

for some pair of integers $a$ and $b$. Since a basis for $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-11})$ is $\{1, \sqrt{-11}\}$, comparing coefficients we obtain

$$
1=3 / 2 a^{2} b+3 / 2 a b^{2}-b^{3}
$$

and

$$
y=a^{3}+\left(3 a^{2} b\right) / 2-\left(15 a b^{2}\right) / 2-4 b^{3} .
$$

Taking norms in $y+\sqrt{-11}=\left(a+\frac{b}{2}(1+\sqrt{-11})\right)^{3}$ we obtain

$$
x^{3}=\left(a^{2}+a b+3 b^{2}\right)^{3},
$$

hence

$$
x=a^{2}+a b+3 b^{2}
$$

Multiplying the first equation by 2 and substituting the expression for $x$ yields

$$
2=3 b x-11 b^{3}=b\left(3 x-11 b^{2}\right)
$$

therefore $b \in\{-2,-1,1,2\}$. Chasing through the possibilities, $x=3,15$. This yields $y^{2}=3^{3}-11=4^{2}, y^{2}=15^{3}-11=58^{2}$. We have proved that if $(x, y)$ is a solution to $y^{2}=x^{3}-11$ then it must satisfy $(x, y) \in$ $\{(3, \pm 4),(15, \pm 58)\}$. Conversely, one can check that these are all in fact solutions.

## Section 8.4: The Fermat Equation

The equation $x^{n}+y^{n}=z^{n}$ has no non-trivial integer solutions for an integer $n \geq 3$ : Conjectured by Fermat in 1637, proved by Wiles in 1995.

1. $x^{2}+y^{2}=z^{2}$.

A modulus 4 argument shows that $x$ and $y$ cannot both be odd. Given a solution $(x, y, z)$ with $(x, y)=d>1$, we can obtain another solution $\left(x_{0}, y_{0}, z_{0}\right)$ after division by $d^{2}$. So it suffices to characterize primitive solutions $(x, y, z)$ where $x, y, z>0,(x, y)=1$, and $x$ is odd and $y$ is even and $z$ is odd. A solution satisfies $(z+x)(z-x)=y^{2}=4 y_{0}^{2}$. The factors $z-x$ and $z+x$ are even. Any prime divisor $p$ of $z+x$ and $z-x$ must be a divisor of $(z+x)-(z-x)=2 x$. It cannot divide $x$, otherwise it divides $z$ and therefore $y$. Hence $p=2$. Writing $z+x=2 u$ and $z-x=2 v$ we have $u v=y_{0}^{2}$. This yields $u=a^{2}, v=b^{2}$, hence $(x, y, z)=\left(a^{2}-b^{2}, 2 a b, a^{2}+b^{2}\right)$ where $a>b$ have opposite parity and are coprime. Conversely, every such triple is a reduced solution: If $p$ is a common prime divisor of $a^{2}-b^{2}$ and $2 a b$ then it must divide $a$ or $b$, but if so then it divides both $a$ and $b$ : contradiction. Therefore $a^{2}-b^{2}$ and $2 a b$ are coprime.
REMARK: The first element $x$ in a primitive Pythagorean triple $(x, y, z)$ is a difference of squares $a^{2}-b^{2}$ where $a$ and $b$ are coprime and of opposite parity. When $x$ itself is a perfect square $X^{2}$ we obtain another Pythagorean triple $(X, b, a)$. It is primitive: $X$ and $b$ are coprime since $a$ and $b$ are, and $X^{2}=a^{2}-b^{2}$ forces $b$ to be even.
2. $x^{4}+y^{4}=z^{4}$.

The method of infinite descent can be used to show that $x^{4}+y^{4}=z^{2}$ has no non-trivial solutions. If there is a solution then $\left(x^{2}, y^{2}, z\right)$ is a Pythagorean triple. Choose a primitive solution in which $x^{2}$ is odd, $y^{2}$ is even, and $x^{2}, y^{2}, z$ are coprime in pairs. Then there exists a coprime pair $a, b$ of opposite parity such that $x^{2}=a^{2}-b^{2}, y^{2}=2 a b$, and $z=a^{2}+b^{2}$. By the remark above, $(x, b, a)$ is a primitive Pythagorean triple and there is a coprime pair $A, B$ of opposite parity such that $x=A^{2}-B^{2}, b=2 A B, a=A^{2}+B^{2}$. This yields $y^{2}=2 a b=4 A B\left(A^{2}+B^{2}\right)$. Since $A, B$, and $A^{2}+B^{2}$ are coprime in pairs, $A=u^{2}, B=v^{2}, A^{2}+B^{2}=w^{2}$. That is, $u^{4}+v^{4}=w^{2}$. This yields another primitive solution with $w<z$ since $w^{2}=A^{2}+B^{2}=a<a^{2}+b^{2}=z$. This can't continue forever, so there were no solutions to begin with.
3. $x^{3}+y^{3}=z^{3}$.

Suppose there is a positive integer solution to $x^{3}+y^{3}=z^{3}$. Then $x^{3}+y^{3} \equiv z^{3}$ $\bmod 9$, which is only possible if one of $x, y, z$ is divisible by 9 in $\mathbb{Z}$. Let
$\lambda=\frac{3-\sqrt{-3}}{2} \in R_{-3}$. Since $N(\lambda)=3, \lambda$ is irreducible in $R_{-3}$. Moreover $\lambda^{4}=-\frac{9}{2}-\frac{9 i \sqrt{3}}{2}=9 \omega$ where $\omega=\frac{-1-\sqrt{-3}}{2}$ is a unit. We have found nonzero $\alpha, \beta$, $\gamma$ in $R_{-3}$ such that $\alpha^{3}+\beta^{3}+\gamma^{3}=0$ where $\lambda^{4} \mid \gamma$. In other words, $\alpha^{3}+\beta^{3}+\lambda^{12} \gamma_{1}^{3}=0$. This justifies Baker's statement that a positive integer solution to $x^{3}+y^{3}=z^{3}$ gives rise to a non-zero solution to $\alpha^{3}+\beta^{3}+\eta \lambda^{3 n} \gamma^{3}=0$ in $R_{-3}$ where $\eta$ is a unit and $n \geq 2$ and $\gamma$ is not divisible by $\lambda$. We can assume further that $\alpha$ and $\beta$ have no common factors. To complete the proof, we should be able to derive another such solution with $n$ replaced by $n-1$ with $n-1 \geq 2$. Iterating this yields a contradiction.
Details: $\omega$ is a primitive $3^{\text {rd }}$ root of unity. Hence

$$
(\alpha+\beta)(\alpha+\omega \beta)\left(\alpha+\omega^{2} \beta\right)=-\eta \lambda^{3 n} \gamma^{3} .
$$

Hence $\lambda$ divides one of the factors on the left hand side. We claim that $\lambda$ divides all three factors and that $\frac{\alpha+\beta}{\lambda}, \frac{\alpha+\omega \beta}{\lambda}, \frac{\alpha+\omega^{2} \beta}{\lambda}$ have no common factors in $R_{-3}$. To see this, suppose that $\lambda$ divides $\alpha+\omega^{i} \beta$. Then

$$
\left(\alpha+\omega^{i} \beta\right)-\left(\alpha+\omega^{i+1} \beta\right)=\omega^{i}(1-\omega) \beta=-\omega^{i+1} \lambda \beta,
$$

hence $\lambda$ divides $\alpha+\omega^{i+1} \beta$. This implies $\lambda$ divides $\alpha+\omega^{i+2} \beta$. So $\lambda$ divides all three factors. Now suppose that an irreducible $\pi$ divides $\alpha+\omega^{i} \beta$ and $\alpha+\omega^{i+1} \beta$. Then it divides their difference $-\omega^{i+1} \lambda \beta$. If $\pi$ is not an associate of $\lambda$ then it must divide $\beta$, so it also divides $\alpha$, a contradiction. Hence the three algebraic integers $\frac{\alpha+\beta}{\lambda}, \frac{\alpha+\omega \beta}{\lambda}, \frac{\alpha+\omega^{2} \beta}{\lambda}$ have no common factors in $R_{-3}$. So now we can write

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{\alpha+\omega^{i} \beta}{\lambda}=\eta_{1} \alpha_{1}^{3} \\
\frac{\alpha+\omega^{i+1} \beta}{\lambda}=\eta_{2} \beta_{1}^{3} \\
\frac{\alpha+\omega^{i+2} \beta}{\lambda}=\eta_{3} \gamma_{1}^{3} \lambda^{3 n-3}
\end{gathered}
$$

where $\eta_{1}, \eta_{2}, \eta_{3}$ are units in $R_{-3}$ and $\lambda$ does not divide $\gamma_{1}$. Since $1+\omega+\omega^{2}=0$, we have

$$
\eta_{1} \alpha_{1}^{3}+\omega \eta_{2} \beta_{1}^{3}+\omega^{2} \eta_{3} \gamma_{1}^{3} \lambda^{3 n-3}=0
$$

Rescaling,

$$
\alpha_{1}^{3}+\eta_{1} \beta_{1}^{3}+\eta_{2} \gamma_{1}^{3} \lambda^{3 n-3}=0
$$

We have $3 n-3 \geq 3$. Reducing by $\lambda^{3}=3 \sqrt{-3}$ we obtain

$$
\alpha_{1}^{3}+\eta_{1} \beta_{1}^{3} \equiv 0 \bmod 3 \sqrt{-3}
$$

Hence

$$
\alpha_{1}^{3}+\eta_{1} \beta_{1}^{3} \equiv 0 \bmod 9
$$

Lemma 1: The distinct congruence class representatives $\bmod \sqrt{-3}$ in $R_{-3}$ are $-1,0,1$.
Proof: Given that $\omega-1=\left(-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{i \sqrt{3}}{2}\right) \sqrt{-3} \equiv 0 \bmod \sqrt{-3}$, we have $\omega \equiv 1$ $\bmod \sqrt{-3}$. Hence $x+y \omega \equiv x+y \bmod \sqrt{-3}$. Since every integer is in the class of $-1 / 0 / 1 \bmod 3$, it is in these clases $\bmod \sqrt{-3}$. These classes are distinct $\bmod \sqrt{-3}$. So every element in $R_{-3}=\mathbb{Z}[\omega]$ falls into one of these classes.

Lemma 2: When $\sigma \equiv 1 \bmod \sqrt{-3}, \sigma^{3} \equiv 1 \bmod 9$.
Proof: $\sigma^{3}-1=(\sigma-1)\left(\sigma^{2}+\sigma+1\right)$. But $\sigma-1 \equiv 0 \bmod \sqrt{-3}$ and $\sigma^{2}+\sigma+1 \equiv 1+1+1 \equiv 0 \bmod \sqrt{-3}$, so the result follows.

Using the lemmas, we obtain $1 \pm \eta_{1} \equiv 0 \bmod 9$. The only units in $R_{-3}$ satisfying this are $\eta_{1}= \pm 1$. So we can rescale to

$$
\alpha_{1}^{3}+\beta_{1}^{3}+\eta_{2} \gamma_{1}^{3} \lambda^{3 n-3}=0
$$

To complete the proof we must show that $n-1 \geq 2$. If this is not true then we have

$$
1+( \pm 1)+\eta_{2} 3 \sqrt{-3} \equiv 0 \bmod 9
$$

This is not possible in $R_{-3}$, as can be checked by brute force, checking $\eta_{2}=$ $\pm 1, \pm \omega, \pm \omega^{2}$.

## Section 8.5: The Catalan Equation.

It is conjectured that $x^{p}-y^{q}=1$ has only one solution in positive integers, namely $3^{2}-2^{3}=1$. For example, consider the equation $x^{5}-y^{2}=1$. Suppose there is a solution $(x, y)$. As $x$ ranges through $0,1,2,3 \bmod 4, x^{5}$ ranges through $0,1,0,3 \bmod 4$. As $y$ ranges through $0,1,2,3 \bmod 4, y^{2}$ ranges through $0,1,0,1 \bmod 4$. Therefore $x$ and $y$ have the same parity and must both be odd. We have $x^{5}=y^{2}+1=(y+i)(y-i)$. We claim that $y+i$ and $y-i$ are coprime: Suppose $\pi$ is a common irredicuble divisor of $y+i$ and
$y-i$. Then $\pi$ divides their difference $2 i$, hence $N(\pi) \mid 4$. On the other hand, $\pi$ is a divisor of $x^{5}$, hence of $x$ by primality, given that $\mathbb{Q}(i)$ is Euclidean. This implies $N(\pi) \mid x^{2}$. Since $\left(4, x^{2}\right)=1, N(\pi)=1$ : contradiction. Given that $y+i$ and $y-i$ are coprime, $y+i=u z^{5}$ for some unit $u$, and wlog $y+i=z^{5}$ after absorbing the unit into the fifth power. Writing $z=a+b i$ and comparing coefficients in $y+i=(a+b i)^{5}$ we obtain

$$
1=5 a^{4} b-10 a^{2} b^{3}+b^{5}=b\left(5 a^{4}-10 a^{2} b^{2}+b^{4}\right)
$$

Hence $b= \pm 1$ and $5 a^{4}-10 a^{2}+1= \pm 1$. Since there is no integer solution to the latter equation, there was no solution to $x^{5}-y^{2}=1$ to begin with.
REMARK: What we seem to be doing here is exploiting unique factorization in a quadratic field, where we can factor things further than we can in $\mathbb{Z}$, hence imposing more conditions on a potential solution.

## Chapter 8 Exercises:

(i) The positive solutions are of the form $x_{n}+y_{n} \sqrt{d}=(a+b \sqrt{d})^{n}$. Hence $x_{n+1}+y_{n+1} \sqrt{d}=(a+b \sqrt{d})\left(x_{n}+y_{n} \sqrt{d}\right)$. This yields

$$
\begin{gathered}
x_{n+1}=a x_{n}+b d y_{n} \\
y_{n+1}=b x_{n}+a y_{n} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Using just the first recurrence relation and $a^{2}-b^{2} d=1$ yields

$$
\begin{gathered}
x_{n+1}=a x_{n}+b d\left(b x_{n-1}+a y_{n-1}\right)=a x_{n}+b^{2} d x_{n-1}+a\left(x_{n}-a x_{n-1}\right)= \\
2 a x_{n}+\left(b^{2} d-a^{2}\right) x_{n-1}=2 a x_{n}-x_{n-1} \\
x_{n+1}-2 a x_{n}+x_{n-1}=0 .
\end{gathered}
$$

Similarly,

$$
y_{n+1}-2 a y_{n}+y_{n-1}=0
$$

Given $\sqrt{7}=[2, \overline{1,1,1,4}]$, we have $m=4$, hence the convergent $p_{3} / q_{3}=8 / 3$ yields $a+b \sqrt{7}=8+3 \sqrt{7}$. Hence $a=8$.
(ii) $\sqrt{31}=[5, \overline{1,1,3,5,3,1,1,10}]$ has period $m=8$, hence there is no solution to $x^{2}-31 y^{2}=-1$. Another solution is merely that $31 \equiv 3 \bmod 4$, hence 31 is a Gaussian prime and cannot be a divisor of $x^{2}+1=(x+i)(x-i)$ because it divides neither factor.
(iii) We should assume $p \neq q$. We will use an infinite-descent argument. First find a solution to

$$
x^{2}-p q y^{2}=1
$$

where $x>0, y>0$. This yields $x^{2}-y^{2} \equiv 1 \bmod 4$, hence $x$ is odd and $y$ is even. Write $x=2 k+1, y=2 j$. Then

$$
k(k+1)=p q j^{2}
$$

There are four cases to consider.
Case 1: $p q \mid k$. Write $k=p q k_{0}$. Then we have $k_{0}(k+1)=j^{2}$, therefore $k_{0}=u^{2}, k+1=v^{2}, v^{2}-p q u^{2}=1$.

Case 2: $p \mid k$ and $q \mid(k+1)$. Write $k=p k_{0}$ and $k+1=q h$. Then we have $k_{0} h=j^{2}$, therefore $k_{0}=u^{2}, k+1=q v^{2}, p u^{2}-q v^{2}=-1$.
Case 3: $q \mid k$ and $p \mid(k+1)$. As in Case 2 this yields $q u^{2}-p v^{2}=-1$, hence $p v^{2}-q u^{2}=1$.

Case 4: $p q \mid(k+1)$. Write $k+1=p q h$. Then we have $k h=j^{2}, k=u^{2}$, $k+1=p q v^{2}, u^{2}-p q v^{2}=-1$. This yields $u^{2}+1=p q v^{2}, p \mid(u+i)(u-i)$, which is not possible because $p$ is a Gaussian prime and divides neither factor.

Conclusion: finding a solution to $x^{2}-p q y^{2}=1$ yields another solution with smaller $x>0, y>0$ or to a solution to $p x^{2}-q y^{2}= \pm 1$. Eventually we arrive at a solution to the latter.

Example: Let $p=3, q=7$. Then $55^{2}-21\left(12^{2}\right)=1$ using the continued fraction expansion of $\sqrt{21}$ and $m=6$. Writing $55=2 k+1$ yields $k=27$, $k+1=28$. This is Case 2 and yields $u=3, v=2,3\left(3^{2}\right)-7\left(2^{2}\right)=-1$.

Example: Let $p=31, q=41$. Then $32799^{2}-(31)(41)\left(920^{2}\right)=1$ using the continued fraction expansion of $\sqrt{31 \cdot 41}$ and $m=10$. Writing $32799=2 k+1$ yields $k=16399, k+1=16400$. This is Case 2 and yields $u=23, v=20$, $31\left(23^{2}\right)-41\left(20^{2}\right)=-1$.
A generalization (with Russell Jahn): Let $d>1$ be square-free and congruent to $1 \bmod 4$ and divisible by at least one prime $p$ congruent to $3 \bmod 4$. Then there is an integer solution to

$$
a x^{2}-b y^{2}=1
$$

for some $a>1, b>1$ satisfying $a b=d$.
Proof: Start with an integer solution to $x^{2}-d y^{2}=1$ with $x>0, y>0$. By a mod 4 argument, $x$ is odd and $y$ is even. Write $x=2 k+1, y=2 j$. Then

$$
k(k+1)=d j^{2} .
$$

There are three cases to consider.
Case 1: $d \mid k$. Write $k=d k_{0}$. Then we have $k_{0}(k+1)=j^{2}$, therefore $k_{0}=u^{2}$, $k+1=v^{2}, v^{2}-d u^{2}=1$. We have $0<v<x$.
Case 2: $d \mid(k+1)$. Write $k+1=d h$. Then we have $k h=j^{2}, k=u^{2}$, $k+1=d v^{2}, u^{2}-d v^{2}=-1$. This yields $u^{2}+1=d v^{2}$. Therefore $p \mid(u+i)(u-i)$, which is not possible because $p$ is a Gaussian prime and divides neither factor. So Case 2 can't happen.

Case 3: $d=d_{1} d_{2}$ where $d_{1}, d_{2}>1$ and $d_{1} \mid k$ and $d_{2} \mid k+1$. Write $k=d_{1} k_{1}$ and $k+1=d_{2} k_{2}$. Then we have $k_{1} k_{2}=j^{2}$, so we can write $k_{1}=u_{1}^{2}$ and $k_{2}=u_{2}^{2}$. Therefore $k=d_{1} u_{1}^{2}$ and $k+1=d_{2} u_{2}^{2}$, and we have $d_{2} u_{2}^{2}-d_{1} u_{1}^{2}=1$.
An infinite descent argument shows that we must eventually arrive in Case 3.
(iv) Suppose there is a rational solution to $x^{4}-a y^{4}=c$. Then there is an integer solution to $x^{4}=a y^{4}+c z^{4}$ with at least one of $x, y, z$ odd. There are only two possible congruence classes for $n^{4} \bmod 16: 0$ or 1 . This yields $0 / 1 \equiv 0 / a+0 / c \bmod 16$, which can only be realized with $0 \equiv a+c \bmod 16$. Hence $x$ is even, $y$ is odd, $z$ is odd, $a+c=16$. One possible solution is $x=2$ and $y=z=1$ and $a=c=8$. A good trick question.
(v) The only solution to $a^{3}+2 b^{3} \equiv 0 \bmod 7$ is $a, b \equiv 0 \bmod 7$. So if $x^{3}+2 y^{3}=7\left(z^{3}+2 w^{3}\right)$ then each term is divisible by 7 , and an infinite descent argument shows there is no non-trivial solution. Another good trick question.
(vi) $(2 t-1)^{4}+\left(t^{2}-1\right)^{4}+\left(t^{2}-2 t\right)^{4}=2\left(t^{2}-t+1\right)^{4}$.
(vii) Necessary conditions for $y^{2}=x^{3}-17$ : Reducing mod 4, $y^{2} \equiv x^{3}-1$. Since $y^{2} \equiv 0,1$ and $x^{3}-1 \equiv 0,3, y$ must be even and $x$ must be odd. Now write $y^{2}=\left(x^{3}+8\right)-25=(x+2)\left(x^{2}+2 x+4\right)-25$. When $x \equiv 1 \bmod$ $4, x+2 \equiv 3$, hence $x^{3}+8$ has a prime divisor $p \equiv 3 \bmod 4$. This implies $y^{2} \equiv-25 \bmod p$, which contradicts the fact that -1 is not a quadratic
residue $\bmod p$. When $x \equiv 3, x^{3}+8 \equiv 3 \bmod 4$, so again there is no solution. Hence this equation has no integer solutions.
(viii) The field $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-2})$ is Euclidean. If there is any solution to $y^{2}=x^{3}-2$ then $y$ must be odd and $x$ must be congruent to $3 \bmod 4$ since $y^{2} \equiv 0,1,0,1$ and $x^{3}-2 \equiv 2,3,2,1 \bmod 4$. Rearranging $y^{2}=x^{3}-2$ to $y^{2}+2=x^{3}$, we obtain

$$
(y-\sqrt{-2})(y+\sqrt{-2})=x^{3}
$$

Now let $\pi$ be a Gaussian prime divisor of both $y-\sqrt{-2}$ and $y+\sqrt{-2}$. Then it is a divisor of their difference $2 \sqrt{-2}$, hence $N(\pi) \mid 8$, hence $|N(\pi)| \in$ $\{1,2,4,8\}$. Since $\pi\left|x^{3}, N(\pi)\right| x^{6}$, forcing $N(\pi)$ to be odd. Hence $|N(\pi)|=1$. Therefore $y-\sqrt{-2}$ and $y+\sqrt{-2}$ are coprime and by unique factorization $y+\sqrt{-2}=\mu \omega^{3}$ for some unit $\mu$. Since $\mu= \pm 1$ in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-2})$, we can write $y+\sqrt{-2}=\gamma^{3}=(a+b \sqrt{-2})^{3}$. Comparing coefficients of $\sqrt{-2}$ yields

$$
1=3 a^{2} b-2 b^{3}=b\left(3 a^{2}-2 b^{2}\right)
$$

This yields $(a, b)=( \pm 1, \pm 1)$. We also have

$$
x^{3}=(a-b \sqrt{-2})^{3}(a+b \sqrt{-2})^{3}=a^{6}+6 a^{4} b^{2}+12 a^{2} b^{4}+8 b^{6}=27 .
$$

So $y^{2}=x^{3}-2$ is solvable with $x=3, y= \pm 5$.
(ix) Let $S$ be the set of all coprime and positive $(x, y, z)$ satisfying $x^{4}-y^{4}=z^{2}$. We will show that $(x, y, z) \in S \Longrightarrow\left(x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}, z^{\prime}\right) \in S$ with $x^{\prime}<x$. Hence $S$ must be empty. We will let $P$ represent the set of primitive Pythagorean triples.
Suppose $(x, y, z) \in S$. Then $x$ must be odd and $y$ and $z$ must be of opposite parity.
Case 1: $y$ is odd and $z$ is even. Then $\left(y^{2}, z, x^{2}\right) \in P$, hence $\left(y^{2}, z, x^{2}\right)=$ $\left(a^{2}-b^{2}, 2 a b, a^{2}+b^{2}\right)$, hence

$$
a^{4}-b^{4}=\left(a^{2}-b^{2}\right)\left(a^{2}+b^{2}\right)=(y x)^{2},
$$

hence $(a, b, y x) \in S$ with $a<x$.
Case 2: $y$ is even and $z$ is odd. Then $\left(z, y^{2}, x^{2}\right) \in P$, hence $\left(z, y^{2}, x^{2}\right)=$ $\left(a^{2}-b^{2}, 2 a b, a^{2}+b^{2}\right)$.
Case 2.1: $a$ is even and $b$ is odd. Then $a=2 a_{1}^{2}$ and $b=b_{1}^{2}$ and $\left(b_{1}^{2}, 2 a_{1}^{2}, x\right) \in P$, hence $\left(b_{1}^{2}, 2 a_{1}^{2}, x\right)=\left(a_{2}^{2}-b_{2}^{2}, 2 a_{2} b_{2}, a_{2}^{2}+b_{2}^{2}\right)$, hence $a_{2}=a_{3}^{2}$ and $b_{2}=b_{3}^{2}$, hence $b_{1}^{2}=a_{3}^{4}-b_{3}^{4}$, hence $\left(a_{3}, b_{3}, b_{1}\right) \in S$ with $a_{3} \leq a_{2}<x$.

Case 2.2: $a$ is odd and $b$ is even. Then $a=a_{1}^{2}$ and $b=2 b_{1}^{2}$ and $\left(a_{1}^{2}, 2 b_{1}^{2}, x\right) \in P$, hence $\left(a_{1}^{2}, 2 b_{1}^{2}, x\right)=\left(a_{2}^{2}-b_{2}^{2}, 2 a_{2} b_{2}, a_{2}^{2}+b_{2}^{2}\right)$, hence $a_{2}=a_{3}^{2}$ and $b_{2}=b_{3}^{2}$, hence $a_{1}^{2}=a_{3}^{4}-b_{3}^{4}$, hence $\left(a_{3}, b_{3}, a_{1}\right) \in S$ with $a_{3} \leq a_{2}<x$.
(x) If $x^{4}+y^{4}=z^{3}$ has a primitive solution then $z$ is odd. We have

$$
\left(x^{2}+i y^{2}\right)\left(x^{2}-i y^{2}\right)=z^{3} .
$$

If $\pi$ is a common divisor of $x^{2}+i y^{2}$ and $x^{2}-i y^{2}$ then it divides $2 x^{2}$ and $2 i y^{2}$ and $z^{3}$. Hence $N(\pi)$ divides $4 x^{4}$ and $4 y^{2}$ and $z^{6}$. If $p$ is a prime divisor of $N(\pi)$ then it divides $4 x^{4}$ and $4 y^{2}$ and $z^{6}$. Since $z$ is odd, $p$ is odd and must divide $x$ and $y$. Contradiction. Hence $N(\pi)=1$ and $x^{2}+i y^{2}$ and $x^{2}-i y^{2}$ are coprime. Hence $x^{2}+i y^{2}=u(a+b i)^{3}$ for some $u \in\{1, i,-1,-i\}$ by unique factorization. Multiplying through by $u^{-1}$ and absorbing the minus sign into the cube we can write $X^{2}+i Y^{2}=(a+b i)^{3}$. We have $X^{2}=a\left(a^{2}-3 b^{2}\right)$ and $Y^{2}=b\left(3 a^{2}-b^{2}\right)$. Suppose $p$ is a prime dividing $a$ and $a^{2}-3 b^{2}$. Then $p=3$ and in fact $\left(a, a^{2}-3 b^{2}\right)=3$. Similarly, if $q$ is a prime dividing $b$ and $3 a^{2}-b^{2}$ then $q=3$ and $\left(b, 3 a^{2}-b^{2}\right)=3$. Therefore $\left(a, a^{2}-3 b^{2}\right)=1$ or $\left(b, 3 a^{2}-b^{2}\right)=1$. If both pairs are coprime then, as we argued before, we can derive a positive solution to $X^{4}-3 Y^{4}=z^{2}$. Now suppose $\left(a, a^{2}-3 b^{2}\right)=3$ and $\left(b, 3 a^{2}-b^{2}\right)=1$. Then $a=3 a_{1}$ and $|b|=b_{1}^{2}$ and we can write $X^{2}=3 a_{1}\left(9 a_{1}^{2}-3 b_{1}^{4}\right)$. Writing $X=3 X_{1}$ we obtain $X_{1}^{2}=a_{1}\left(3 a_{1}^{2}-b_{1}^{4}\right)$. Hence we have $\left|a_{1}\right|=a_{2}^{2}$ and $\left|3 a_{1}^{2}-b_{1}^{4}\right|=c^{2}$ and we have $\left|3 a_{2}^{4}-b_{1}^{4}\right|=c^{2}$, which by a mod 4 argument implies $b_{1}^{4}-3 a_{2}^{4}=c^{2}$. The other case yields the same conclusion. Hence there is a primitive solution to $x^{4}-3 y^{4}=z^{2}$. We will show using computations in $R_{3}$ that this gives rise to $X^{4}-3 Y^{4}=Z^{4}$ with $X<x$.
Given a primitive solution to $x^{4}-3 y^{4}=z^{2}$, a mod 4 argument shows that $z$ must be odd and that $x$ and $y$ must have opposite parity. We have

$$
\left(x^{2}-\sqrt{3} y^{2}\right)\left(x^{2}+\sqrt{3} y^{2}\right)=z^{2}
$$

The two factors are coprime in $R_{3}$, hence

$$
x^{2}+\sqrt{3} y^{2}=u(a+b \sqrt{3})^{2}
$$

for some positive unit $u$. Since the positive units in $R_{3}$ are integer powers of $2+\sqrt{3}$, by creative grouping we can write

$$
x^{2}+\sqrt{3} y^{2}=(A+B \sqrt{3})^{2}
$$

or

$$
x^{2}+\sqrt{3} y^{2}=(2+\sqrt{3})(A+B \sqrt{3})^{2} .
$$

The latter equation can be ruled out using congruences mod 4 as follows: it implies

$$
x^{2}=2 A^{2}+6 A B+6 B^{2}
$$

and

$$
y^{2}=A^{2}+4 A B+3 B^{2} .
$$

Hence $x$ is even, $y$ is odd. Since $y^{2} \equiv A^{2}+3 B^{2} \bmod 4, A$ is odd and $B$ is even. Writing $x=2 x_{0}$, we have $2 x_{0}^{2}=A^{2}+3 A B+3 B^{2}$, which is impossible. Given that $x^{2}+\sqrt{3} y^{2}=(A+B \sqrt{3})^{2}$, we have

$$
x^{2}=A^{2}+3 B^{2}
$$

and

$$
y^{2}=2 A B
$$

Hence $y$ is even, $x$ is odd, $A$ is odd, $B$ is even, and all four numbers are coprime in pairs. Writing $A=A_{1}^{2}$ and $B=2 B_{1}^{2}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{gathered}
x^{2}=A_{1}^{4}+12 B_{1}^{4}, \\
y^{2}=4 A_{1}^{2} B_{1}^{2} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Factoring,

$$
\left(x-2 \sqrt{3} B_{1}^{2}\right)\left(x+2 \sqrt{3} B_{1}^{2}\right)=A_{1}^{4},
$$

and repeating the argument above, we arrive at

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=A_{2}^{2}+3 B_{2}^{2}, \\
& 2 B_{1}^{2}=2 A_{2} B_{2},
\end{aligned}
$$

hence $A_{2}=A_{3}^{2}, B_{2}=B_{3}^{2}, B_{1}^{2}=A_{3}^{2} B_{3}^{2}$,

$$
\begin{gathered}
x=A_{3}^{4}+3 B_{3}^{4} \\
A_{1}^{4}=x^{2}-12 B_{1}^{4}=\left(A_{3}^{4}+3 B_{3}^{4}\right)^{2}-12\left(A_{3}^{2} B_{3}^{2}\right)=\left(A_{3}^{4}-3 B_{3}^{4}\right)^{2}
\end{gathered}
$$

hence

$$
A_{3}^{4}-3 B_{3}^{4}= \pm A_{1}^{2} .
$$

A modulo 4 argument shows that in fact we have

$$
A_{3}^{4}-3 B_{3}^{4}=A_{1}^{2} .
$$

Given that $A_{3}<x$, we have infinite descent. So there is no solution to $x^{4}-3 y^{4}=z^{2}$ in positive $x, y, z$.
(xi) For any integer $n, n^{3} \equiv n \bmod 6$, as can be checked directly using $0 \leq n \leq 5$. Therefore

$$
n=\left(n-n^{3}\right)+n^{3}=6 k+n^{3}=(k+1)^{3}+(k-1)^{3}+(-k)^{3}+(-k)^{3}+n^{3} .
$$

(xii) Suppose $x^{2}+7=2^{3 k+2}$ has a solution. Then $x$ must be odd. Writing $x=2 X+1$ we have $4 X^{2}+4 X+8=2^{3 k+2}$, which implies $X^{2}+X+2=2^{3 k}$. We will find all solutions to $x^{2}+x+2=y^{3}$.

Assume $x^{2}+x+2=y^{3}$. A modulus 4 argument shows that $x$ and $y$ must both be even. Factoring, we obtain

$$
\left(x+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sqrt{-7}}{2}\right)\left(x+\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\sqrt{-7}}{2}\right)=y^{3} .
$$

Any common divisor $\delta$ of $x+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sqrt{-7}}{2}$ and $x+\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\sqrt{-7}}{2}$ is a common divisor of $2 x+1$ and $2 \sqrt{-7}$ and $y^{3}$. Hence $N(\delta)$ is a common divisor of $(2 x+1)^{2}$ and 28 and $y^{6}$. If $p$ is a prime divisor of $N(\delta)$ then $p \in\{2,7\}$. But 2 does not divide $(2 x+1)^{2}$ and 7 does not divide $y^{6}$. So in fact $|N(\delta)|=1$ and $\delta$ is a unit and $x+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sqrt{-7}}{2}$ and $x+\frac{1}{2}-\frac{\sqrt{-7}}{2}$ are coprime. By unique factorization in $R_{-7}$, this forces

$$
x+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\sqrt{-7}}{2}=u\left(a+b \frac{1+\sqrt{-7}}{2}\right)^{3}
$$

for some unit $u$, and since the units in $R_{-7}$ are $\pm 1$, we can assume without loss of generality that $u=1$. Given that
$\left(a+b \frac{1+\sqrt{-7}}{2}\right)^{3}=a^{3}+\frac{3 a^{2} b}{2}+\frac{3}{2} \sqrt{-7} a^{2} b-\frac{9 a b^{2}}{2}+\frac{3}{2} \sqrt{-7} a b^{2}-\frac{5 b^{3}}{2}-\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{-7} b^{3}$,
comparing coefficients of $\sqrt{-7}$ we obtain

$$
\frac{1}{2}=\frac{3}{2} a^{2} b+\frac{3}{2} a b^{2}-\frac{1}{2} b^{3},
$$

$$
1=b\left(3 a^{2}+3 a b-b^{2}\right)
$$

The only integer solutions to this are $(a, b)=(0,-1)$ and $(a, b)=(1,-1)$. Given that

$$
\begin{gathered}
x+\frac{1}{2}=a^{3}+\frac{3 a^{2} b}{2}-\frac{9 a b^{2}}{2}-\frac{5 b^{3}}{2}, \\
x \in\{-3,2\} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence we obtain solutions $(x, y)=(-3,2)$ and $(x, y)=(3,2)$.
In summary, the only integer solution to $x^{2}+x+2=2^{3 k}$ is $x \in\{-3,2\}$ and $2^{k}=2$, which forces $k=1$.

